



CAESAR

FROM A BUST IN THE MUSEUM OF THE LOUVRE.

Classical Text-Book Series.

CAESAR'S
BELLUM BRITANNICUM,

INTRODUCTORY, NOTICES, NOTES, COMPLETE VOCABULARY, A SERIES
OF EXERCISES FOR RE-TRANSLATION, AND GRADED
PASSAGES FOR SIGHT READING.

FOR THE USE OF

JUNIOR CLASSES IN HIGH SCHOOLS AND
STUDENTS READING FOR THE PRIMARY EXAMINATION.

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,

HEAD MASTER ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE.

AND

E. W. HAGARTY, B.A.,

CLASSICAL MASTER HARBORD ST. COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, TORONTO—LATE FELLOW BY COURTESY
JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY, BALTIMORE.

TORONTO:

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,

9 FRONT STREET WEST.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand
eight hundred and ninety-five, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto,
Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

PREFACE.

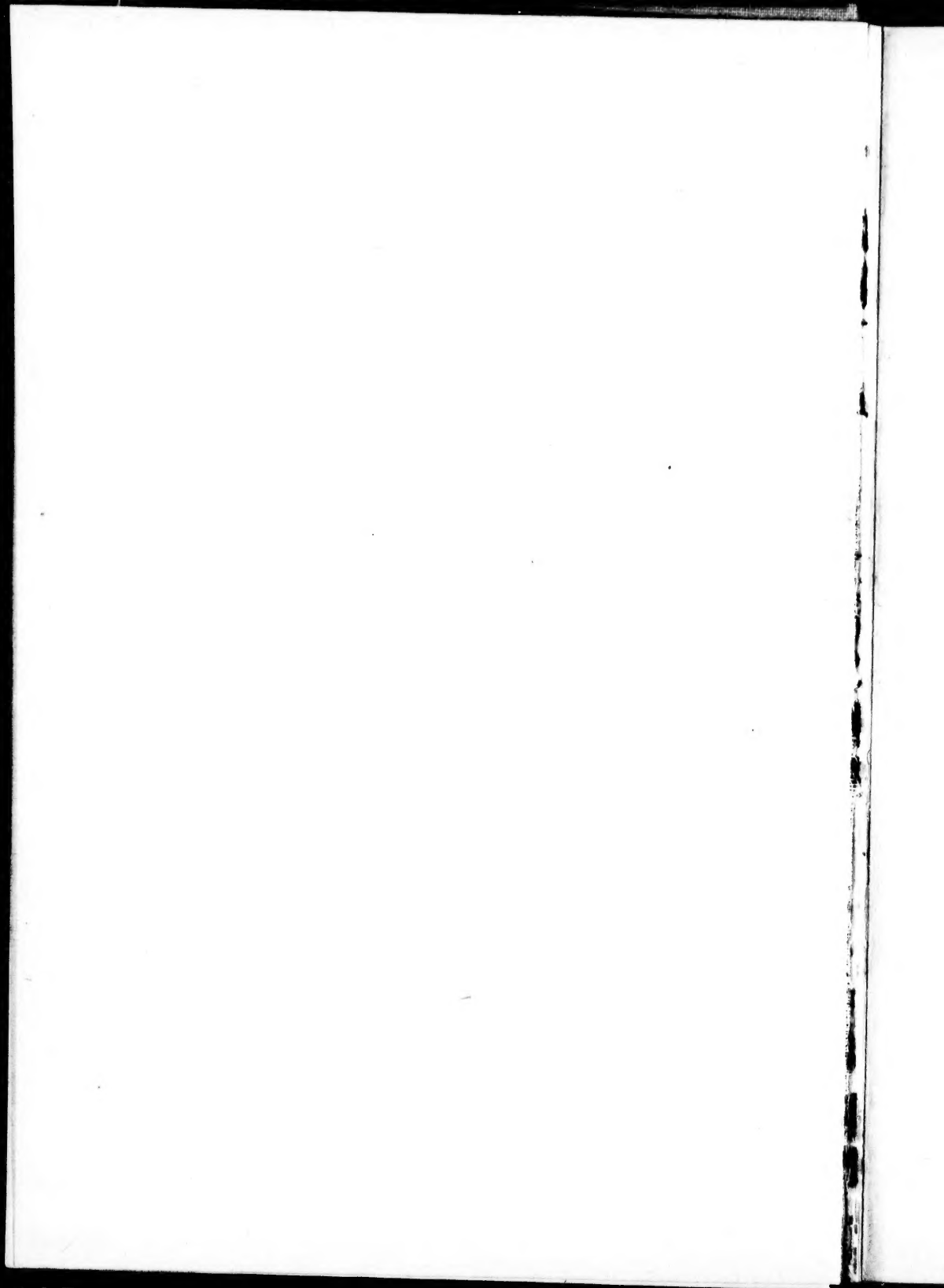
This edition of Caesar's *Bellum Britannicum* is intended to supply the wants of students reading for the Primary Examination for the years 1896, -97, -98. It would be an ideal course in Latin to have a student thoroughly conversant with either the First Latin Book or the Primary Latin Book before attempting Caesar, but as many attempt Caesar before taking a thorough elementary course in grammar, a number of graduated exercises forming an easy introduction to the difficulties of Caesar have been inserted. To provide for the requirements of the Education Department, a series of graded passages for sight reading have been added. It is to be hoped that these new features of the book will commend themselves to all.

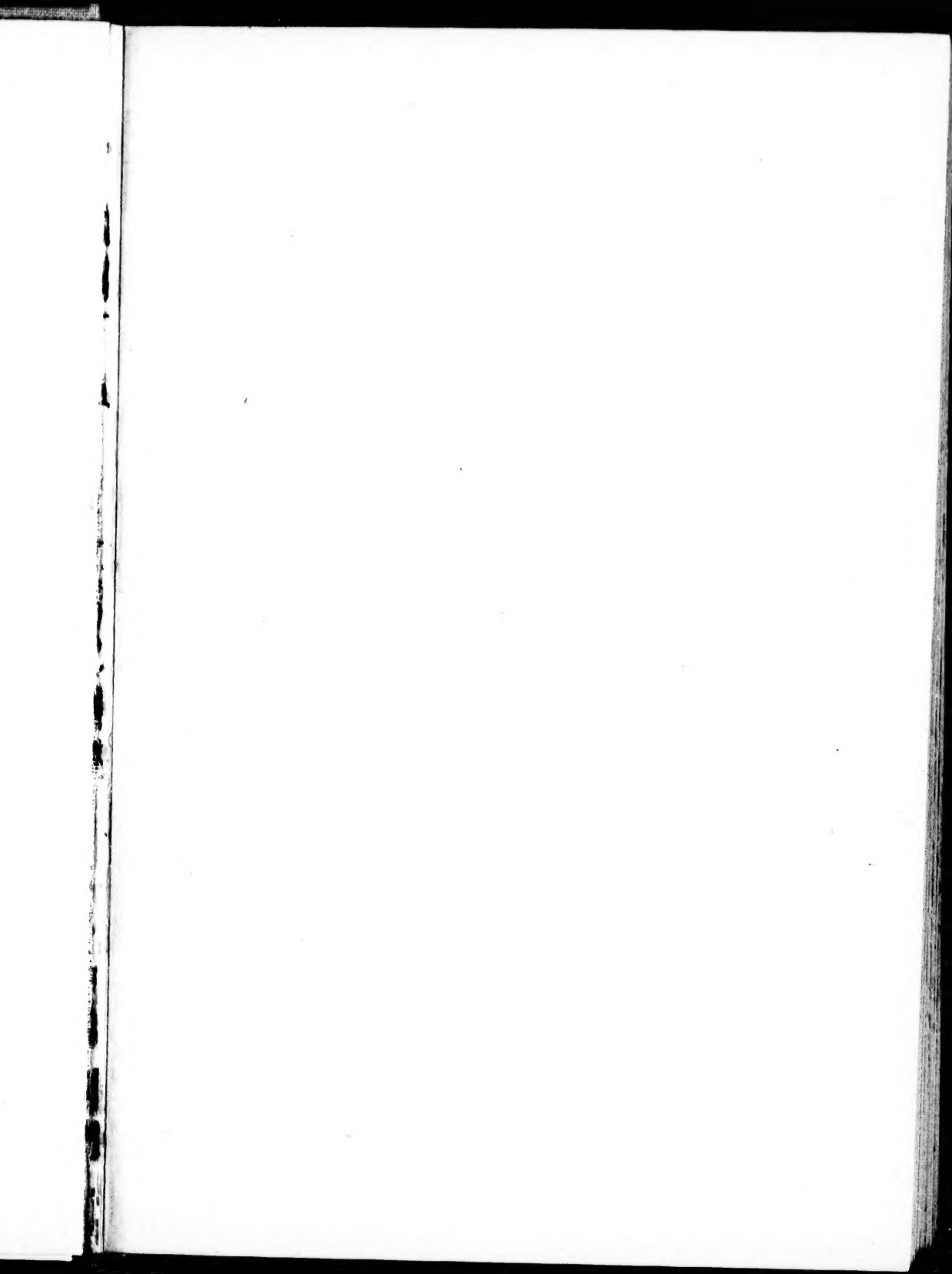
The exercises at the end will be found useful, and a good test of the pupil's knowledge of the Latin text.

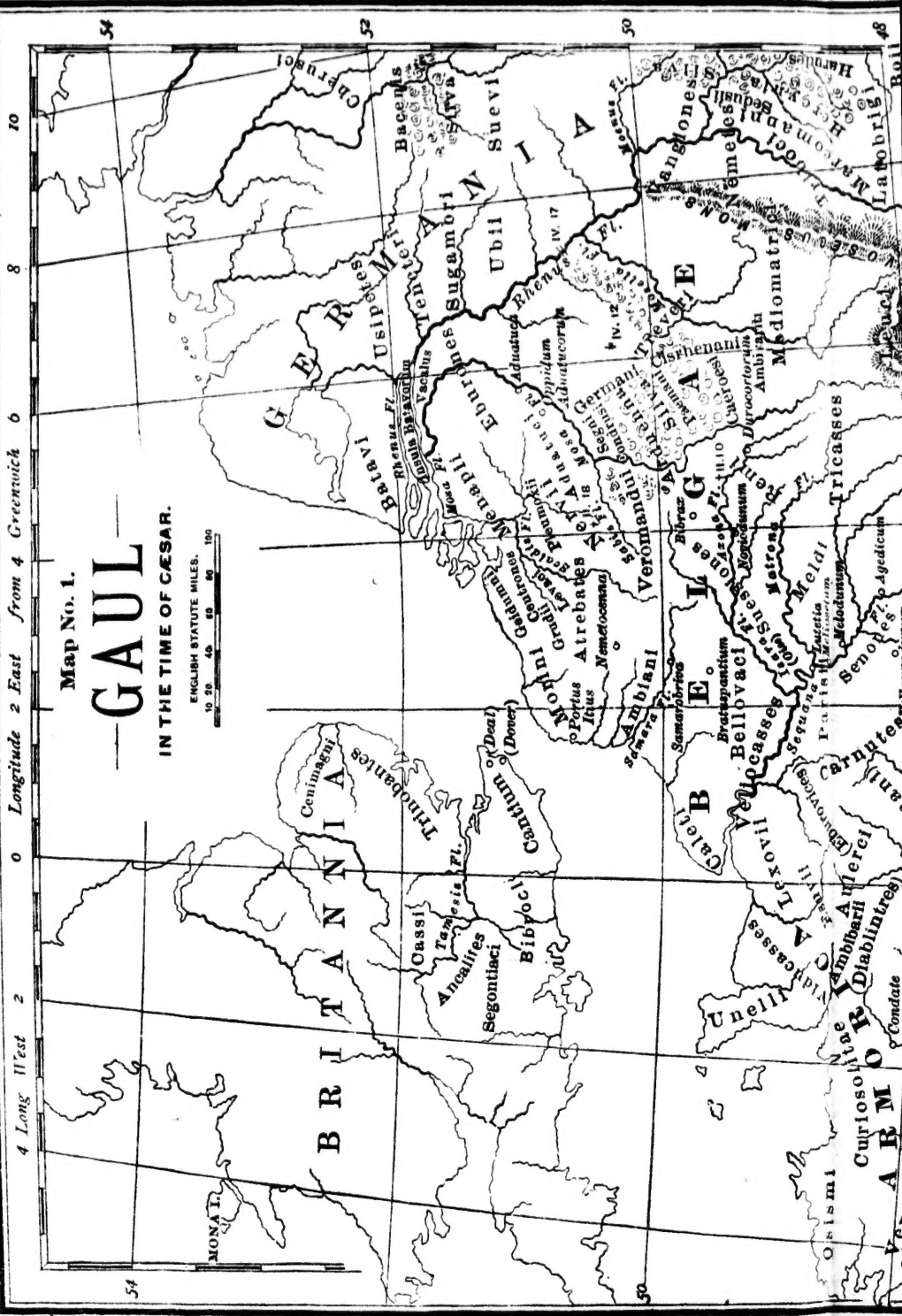
J. H.

E. W. H.

A7421





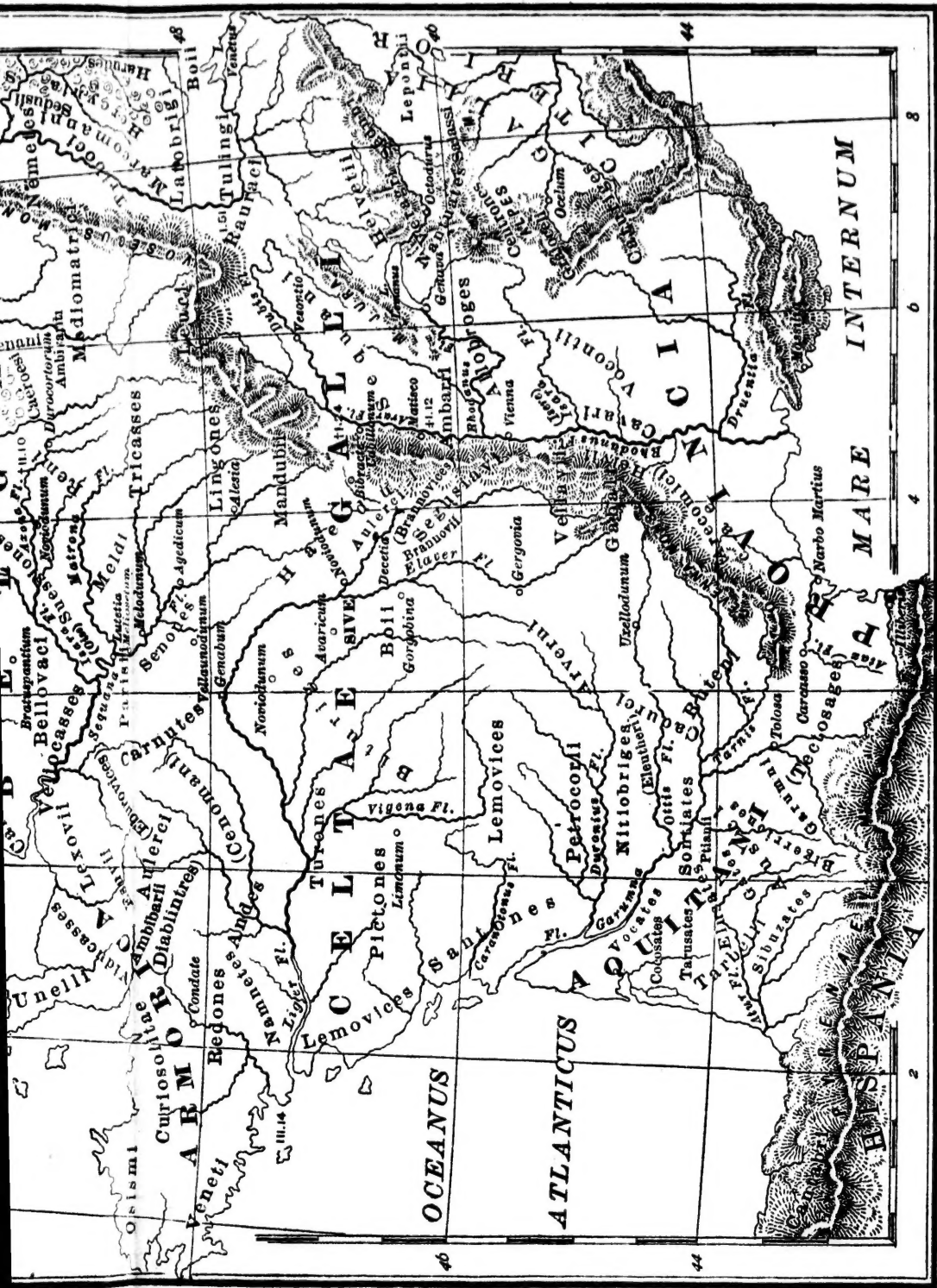


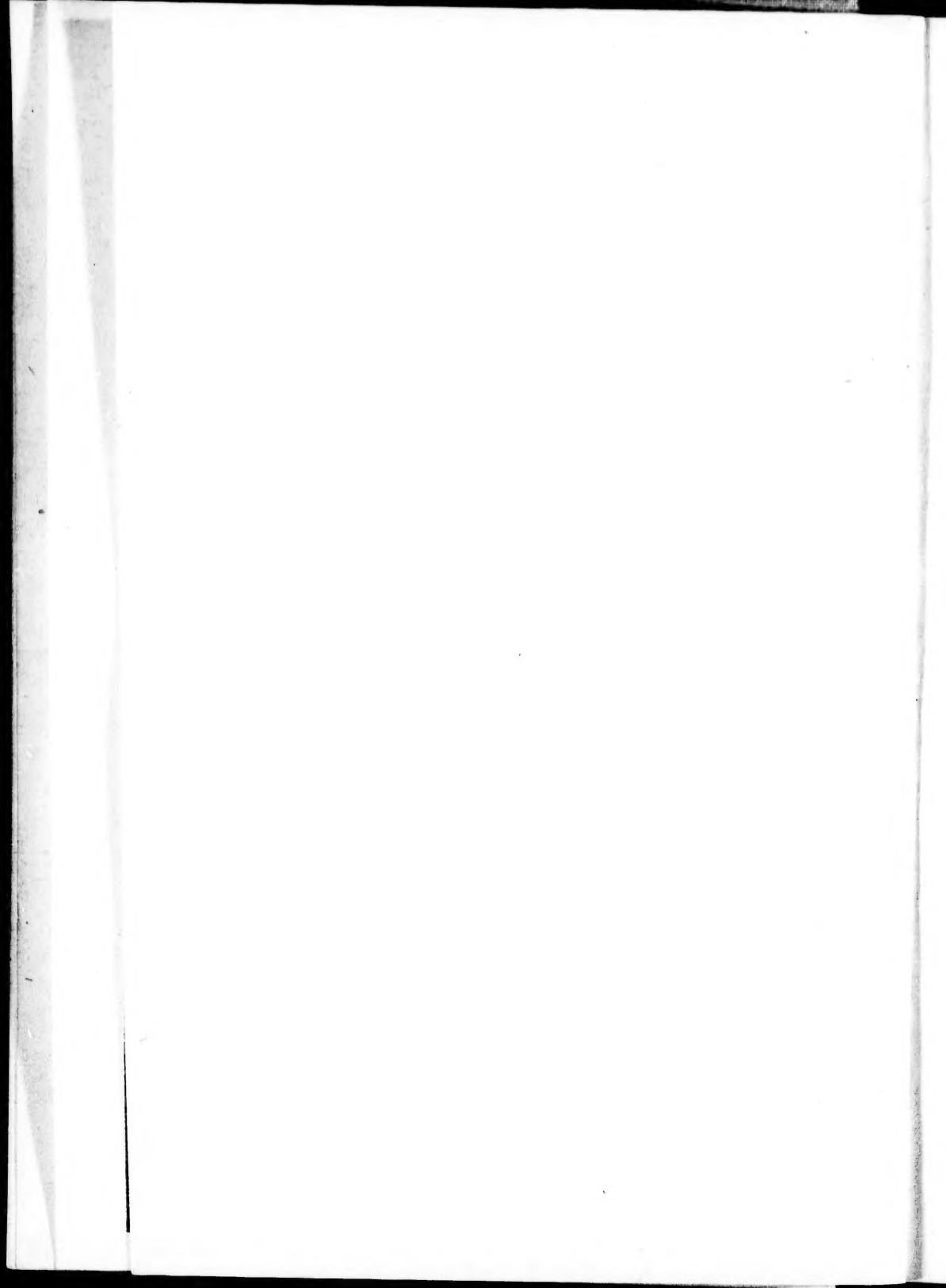
Map No. 1.

GAUL

IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR.







LIFE OF CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar¹ was born on the 12th of July, ^{BIRTH.} B.C. 100.² He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family (*gens Julia*) was not merely ^{His family.} one of the oldest, but was also one of the most respected of the patrician families of the capital. It traced its descent to Iulus, son of Aeneas, and thus through Venus claimed to be of divine origin. It also embraced among its members many who distinguished themselves in the service of the state.

Little is known of Caesar's father, except that he held ^{Caesar's} at some time or other the office of *praetor*, and that he ^{father.} died suddenly at Pisa, B.C. 84. The education of young Caesar seems to have been directed chiefly by his mother, *Aurelia*, who was a woman of lofty ambition and a firm believer in the noble destiny of her son. His early training, according to the fashion of that day, consisted in acquiring a knowledge of numbers, grammar, music, and in practising physical exercises. He is also said to have devoted considerable time to verse making.³

¹Each Roman citizen had usually *three names*: called the *praenomen* (marking the *individual*), the *nomen* (designating the *gens* or *clan*), and the *cognomen* (telling the *family*). Thus Caius is a *praenomen*, Julius is a *nomen*, and Caesar, a *cognomen*. Sometimes an *agnomen* was added for honorary distinction as *Africanus* to P. Cornelius Scipio.

²Mommsen (*Hist. of Rome*, Vol. III., 15) argues that Caesar was born 102 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the *lex annalis*, which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices, was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the quaestorship before he was 21, the aedileship before 37, the praetorship before 41, the consulship before 43. By referring to the chronology of his life, the plausibility of the argument would appear. In answer to this we may say that: (1) the law was not always observed; (2) Suetonius represents Caesar as 16 years of age when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius and Appian, state that Caesar was 56 years of age when he was assassinated.

³*Laudes Herculis* and *Oedipus* were among his youthful poems.

*Related to
Marius.*

His aunt Julia was married to C. Marius. To this relationship may be ascribed the fact that Caesar at the early age of 14 was appointed to the office of priest of Jove (*flamen dialis*), by virtue of which he was a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. We may also ascribe to his connection with Marius the bent of his political opinions. Caesar after the death of the great dictator led the popular or democratic party as opposed to the senatorial or aristocratic.

*Betrothed to
Cossutia.*

He was at first betrothed to Cossutia, a wealthy heiress, but he broke off the engagement on the death of his father. In the following year (83 B.C.), he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sylla. This union was displeasing to Sylla, who ordered Caesar to divorce Cornelia. This Caesar refused to do. Through the intercession of Aurelius Cotta, Caesar was at length pardoned.

*Marries
Cornelia.*

*Goes to the
East and
serves his
first cam-
paign.*

In consequence of having thwarted the will of Sylla Caesar incurred his enmity and found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to the East, and served his first campaign under M. Minucius Thermus. He seems to have remained in the East for about four years, distinguishing himself for personal bravery at the siege of Mitylene and in the war against the Cilician pirates. On the report of Sylla's death, 78 B.C., he came home.

*Returns
home.*

*Tactics of
Caesar.*

The tactics that Caesar adopted at this time to further the interests of his party showed his consummate skill as a political leader. The Roman Senate had become utterly powerless to deal with the duty of administering properly the government. The lower classes filled with turbulent crowds the cities, in consequence of the free labour of the Italian provincials being in a great measure supplanted by that of slaves. Ever since the days of the Gracchi opposed to this democratic element was the Senate, conservative in its nature, being composed of men whose interests were likely to suffer if the democratic element should get any power in the state. In the mid-

*Composition
of the
Senate.*

way between these two forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who prided themselves simply in tracing their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people. Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (78 B.C.) and C. Antonius (77 B.C.) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharnacussa (now *Fernaco*), one of the Sporades. He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of \$50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

The three parties at Rome.

Caesar indicts Dolabella and Antonius.

Goes to Rhodes. Captured by pirates.

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected *pontifex*. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B.C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In 68 B.C., Caesar became *quaestor*, and by virtue of this

Elected pontifex.

Reaction against Sylla's policy.

Elected quaestor.

office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at *Corduba* (now *Cordova*). One of the chief duties of the quaestor was to attend the provincial assizes (*conventus*), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife Cornelia.

*Married
Pompeia,
B.C. 67.*

Caesar married Pompey's cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompey was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (*lex Gabinia*) sole commander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who infested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithradates, king of Pontus.

*Elected
curule
aedile.*

In 65 B.C., Caesar was elected *curule aedile*. While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of Campi Raudii, Aquae Sextiae, and over Jugurtha, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B.C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar became *pontifex maximus*. On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

*Caesar
pontifex
maximus.*

*Elected
praetor.*

In 62 B.C., Caesar was elected *praetor*, and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On

resigning the office, he went as *propraetor* to Spain, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the *First Triumvirate*. Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people. Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for five years with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

*Propraetor of Spain.**First Triumvirate.**Consul 59 B.C.**Julia Caesar's daughter, married to Pompey.**Goes to Gaul.*

GALLIC CAMPAIGNS.

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now *Autun*) drove back the Helvetii, who were moving westward and attempting to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at *Basle* Ariovistus, a German King, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui.

58 B.C. Helvetii and Ariovistus

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at the river Sabis (now *Sambre*).

B.C. 57. The Belgae.

Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the tribes of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended to five years further.

B.C. 56. The Veneti.

In his fourth campaign Caesar crossed the Rhine, but remained only eighteen days on the German side. Later in the same year he crossed over to Britain.

B.C. 55. The Germans and Britons.

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, however, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden uprising in Gaul, which he suppressed 53 B.C.

B.C. 54. Britain.

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt under Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With

B.C. 52.

the fall of Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever.

B.C. 51 In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection.

B.C. 50. The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the summer to review his troops.

QUARREL WITH POMPEY.

Changes while Caesar was in Gaul. During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the battle of Carrhae, B.C. 53. This really broke up the Triumvirate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree "that the Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt," was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war, and was regarded as such by Caesar.

Caesar crosses the Rubicon. With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at *Ilerda*, and took Massilia in Southern Gaul.

Pharsalia. B.C. 48. Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both armies encamped on the Apsus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive battle was fought August 9th, B.C. 48, at *Pharsalia*. Though Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey, the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day, and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

Thapsus. B.C. 46. Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of *Thapsus*, in Africa, 46 B.C. Caesar was now the master

of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

In 45 B.C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at *Munda Munda*, totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man.

A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house. *Death of Caesar, B.C. 44.*

Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect; his features well marked and prominent: his complexion fair; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age. *Caesar's appearance.*



BRUTUS, THE MURDERER OF CAESAR.

II.

THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

(1) *Extant*.:—

(a) *Commentarii de Bello Gallico* in seven books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul from B.C. 58 to B.C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) *Commentarii de Bello Civili* in three books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppius, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works*.:—

(a) *Anticato*. A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) *De Analogia*, or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine loquendi*. Dedicated to Cicero and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) *Libri Auspiciorum* or *Auguralia*. Published B.C. 63, when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus*.

(d) *De Astris*. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) *Apothegmata* or *Dicta Collectanea*. A collection of witticisms made at different times.

(f) *Poemata*.; nearly all written in his youth. To

these belong *Oedipus*, *Laudes Herculis* and *Iter* (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46.

SUMMARY OF CAESAR'S LIFE.

Born 100 B.C. Father dies 84 B.C.

Married Cornelia 83 B.C.

Retires from Rome owing to enmity of Sylla. Returns on Sylla's death, 78 B.C.

Wins popularity by attacks upon Senatorial party.

Goes to Rhodes to study rhetoric under Molo. Captured by pirates on his way thither.

Elected *pontifex*, *quaestor*, *curule aedile*, *pontifex maximus*, *praetor*, 70-62 B.C.

Consul B.C. 59. First Triumvirate.

Gallic Campaigns 58-50 B.C.

Quarrel with Pompey and the Senate, 49 B.C.

Defeats Pompey at **Pharsalia, 48 B.C.**—Gains control of Africa at Thapsus, 46 B.C.—Spain, at Munda, 45 B.C.

Assassinated 44 B.C. ✓

CAESAR'S PERSONALITY.

"To be a great general was the short road to political power. Caesar's keen eye saw this, and, though too much must not be made of it, certainly it was not absent from the motives which made him eager to have the command in Gaul assigned to him. There were great men in the world before Caesar, but it seemed to good judges of his own age that he was greater than them all; and there have been great men after him, but still, compared with all before and after, so far as it is possible to compare where circumstances are so different, his name seems to good judges the greatest of all names known to history. Better men have lived, greater statesmen, perhaps greater generals, but none have so combined the qualities which we praise and wonder at. The Emperor

of Rome, the German Kaisers, probably the Russian Czars, bore or still bear his name. A month, was re-named in his honour, and has retained the name of "the mightiest Julius" ever since in the languages of all Europe.

His wonderful life must be studied elsewhere, his fearless youth, his early manhood devoted to the cause of liberty and reform, his marvellous success as a general, though he only turned soldier comparatively late in life, and held no command until he was forty years old. How he became the master of Rome's destinies, and by justice and clemency showed that he was worthy to control them, and was ambitious more for his country than for himself; and how, in the height of his greatness, he was murdered by men who called him tyrant, and thought that the only right form of government was the rule of the noble and wealthy few,—of the oligarchy which bore and disgraced the name of the Roman Republic,—all this forms a history full of interest and lessons for all time.

Here (Bk. V.) we have only the story of his second invasion of Britain and one scene from the midst of his great exploit of the conquest of Gaul. It will show us something of his care for his men which so endeared him to them, of his promptitude and daring, of his supreme calm and self-control, of his fairness as an historian, of his kindness as a superior officer, slow to blame, quick to praise; and it will give us a lively picture of his enemies, their strength and weakness, their mode of warfare. Above all, it will show us the matchless strength of the Roman legions when fighting behind the entrenchments which they were so skilled in making."—*Colbeck*.

DRAMATIC CHARACTER OF BOOKS V. AND VI.

Mr. Colbeck's words quoted above aptly set forth some of the leading dramatic features of this most interesting portion of Caesar's otherwise rather dry military narrative. In books V. and VI. we realize Caesar's object in writing, *i.e.*, to give to his fellow-countrymen of his own

time, and to leave on record for all ages to come a picture of himself and his army as they figured in these years of Roman aggrandizement in Western Europe. With how bold yet delicate a touch he paints

- (1) himself, as a considerate and humane officer, "slow to blame, quick to praise," (see the episode of Cicero, Bk. V., 46-52, and Bk. VI., 42,); as a cool-headed strategist, a merciful conqueror, and a just judge;
- (2) his subordinate officers, Cotta, Sabinus, Labienus, Cicero, their faults and their virtues;
- (3) his foes, the Britons, the Germans, the Gauls; their chieftains (Cassivellaunus and Ambiorix); their modes of fighting and other national characteristics;
- (4) his own legionaries, with their intrepid zeal amidst fearful odds of peril and hardship;
- (5) and even Pompey, not yet an avowed enemy, conceding something to "friendship and the good of the commonwealth."

These features combine to make books V. and VI. an interesting study even from the literary stand-point.

III.

THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia ^{Greek} Minor, emigrated and settled at Massilia (now *Marseilles*) ^{settlement.} On the conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C. the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid

Romans. of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. Near Massilia, he founded the town of *Aquae Sextiae* (now *Aix*), which obtained its name from the hot springs of the neighbourhood. About this time, the Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindalium, a little above *Avignon*; and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the junction of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name *Provincia*. Massilia however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original *Provincia*, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees, thus keeping open the road to Spain.

Cimbri and Teutones. In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Province. In 109 B.C.

Successive defeats of the Romans. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.

The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. He hastened to Southern Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C. In the following year he met the Cimbri at Vercellae and crushed them in battle.

Cimbri and Teutones separate.

Defeat of Teutones and Cimbri.

During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. He and his associates attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Lentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus.

Intrigues of Catiline.

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, to assist them against the Aedui. Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in the battle of Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence.

Ariovistus invited.

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a great emigration.

Emigration of Helvetii.

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetian noble. Seeing the fertile plains of

*Caesar
Consul.*

*Sets out to
Gaul.*

Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this, B.C. 58, he hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helveti were on the move westward.



ROMAN SOLDIERS, FROM TRAJAN'S COLUMN.

IV.

THE ROMAN ARMY.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass (*phalanx*), a method very common among the

Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the *phalanx* into smaller bodies called *manipuli*, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first (*hastati*) were the youngest men, in the second (*principes*) were men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (*triarii*) were the veterans. Each line contained *ten manipuli*, arranged in the following fashion :

Hastati:
Principes:
Triarii:

Each *manipulus* of the two first lines contained two *centuriae*, each commanded by a *centurio*. The centurion commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled *centurio prior*, the one commanding the left century, *centurio posterior*. Light armed troops (*velites*) were attached, twenty, to each century. Thus we have :

<i>Hastati</i> :	10 manipuli,	120 men = 20 centuries,	60 men = 1,200
<i>Principes</i> :	10 "	120 " = 20 "	60 " = 1,200
<i>Triarii</i> :	10 "	60 " = 20 "	30 " = 600
—	—	—	—
30	60		3,000
		To every century, 20 velites = 1,200	—
			4,200

This was the *triplex acies* referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion was attached 10 *turmae*, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each, each *turma* being sub-divided into *three decuriae* of 10 men each; each *decuria* was headed by an officer called *decurio*.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort divided into three maniples (*manipuli*), and each maniple into two centuries (*centuriae*). The spear (*hasta*) was given to the *triarii*, who also seem to have

been armed with the pike (*pilum*). Hence the first two lines were sometimes called *ante-pilani*.

The officers of the army were :

- | | |
|--|--|
| <i>Officers.</i>

<i>Centurions.</i> | (a) <i>Centurions (Centuriones)</i> : These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff. |
| <i>Tribunes.</i> | (b) <i>Military Tribunes (Tribuni Militum)</i> : These were six to each legion : hence ten centurions were under each tribune. |
| <i>Legati.</i> | (c) <i>Lieutenants (Legati)</i> : These were next the general in command. The cavalry were under the command of the <i>praefecti equitum</i> and <i>decuriones</i> . |

The *weapons* of the Roman soldier were of two kinds :

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| <i>Arms.</i> | (i) <i>Offensive weapons.</i> The ordinary soldier (<i>miles legionarius</i>) was armed with (a) <i>the javelin</i> . Of this there were four kinds : <i>pilum</i> , <i>iaculum</i> , <i>hasta</i> , <i>lancea</i> . The <i>pilum</i> was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which a strong, sharp iron point about two feet long was attached. The <i>iaculum</i> was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the <i>hasta</i> was a long spear used for stabbing. The <i>lancea</i> was a light spear with a broad point. The infantry used the <i>pilum</i> , while the cavalry and light armed troops, the <i>iaculum</i> , <i>hasta</i> , and <i>lancea</i> . Some of the latter carried bows (<i>arcus</i>), and arrows (<i>sagittae</i>), slings (<i>fundae</i>).

(b) <i>The sword (gladius)</i> was short, broad, double-edged and pointed, more used for stabbing than for slashing. It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt (<i>baltens</i>). |
|--------------|---|

- (2) *Defensive weapons.* The soldiers of the legion had : (a) *a brazen helmet (cassis)*, surmounted with a crest ; (b) *a cuirass (lorica)*, made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates : (c) *greaves (ocreae)*, reaching as high as the knee ; (d) *a shield* either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim (*scutum*), or made of bronze and of an oval shape (*clipeus*). The light armed troops had a small buckler (*parma*), and a helmet of leather (*galea*). The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic (*tunica*), a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak (*sagum*) was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a brooch on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called *paludamentum*.

The standards of the Roman army were : (a) *Aquila, Standards.* or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. See Vocabulary ; *Aquilifer*. To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) *signum*, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The *vexillum* was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry.

The *musical instruments* of the army were : (a) *tuba, Musical instruments.* trumpet, was straight and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry (b) *cornu* and *buccina* were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch ; (c) *lituus*, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.

V.

THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions ; (a) *agmen primum*, or van ; (b) *exercitus*, *agmen legionum*, or main body ; (c) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (*iter iustum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldier carried two Roman pecks of grain (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The private baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina*.

VI.

THE ARMY IN CAMP.

When the army was on the march, men (*metatores*) were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (*locus superior*) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An embankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates : (1) *porta praetoria*, near the praetorium, or general's tent, faced the enemy ; (2) *porta decumana* was opposite to this ; (3) *porta principalis sinistra* on the left ; and (4) *porta principalis dextra* on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*.

The pickets were generally called *excubitores*; *vigiliae* were night watches; *custodiae* were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about $6\frac{1}{4}$ cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents per day. Besides the regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.

EXPLANATION OF DIAGRAM.

1. *Praetorium*, or General's tent.
2. Ground for horses and baggage of the *Tribuni militum*.
3. Tents of the *Tribuni militum*.
4. Ground occupied by horses and baggage of *praefecti sociorum*.
5. Tents of *praefecti sociorum*.
6. Street 100 feet wide, called *principia* or *via principalis*.
7. Cross street, 50 feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the Roman *equites* or horse.
8. The *equites* of two Roman legions, in 10 *turmae* or troops each.
9. The *triarii* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each, forming on two different streets.
10. The two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *triarii* and *principes* of two legions.
11. The *principes* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
12. The *hastati* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
13. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *hastati* of the two Roman legions and the horse (*equites*) of the allies.
14. The horse of the allies.
15. The infantry of the allies.
16. The *quintana via*, a street 50 feet wide.
17. *Quaestorium*, the quaestor's tent.
18. The tents of *legati*; in front of them and the *quaestorium* was the *forum* where things were sold.
19. The veteran horse (*evocati equites*).
20. The veteran foot (*evocati pedites*).
21. The horse of the consular life guards (*ablecti equites*).
22. The foot of the consular life guards (*ablecti pedites*).
23. A cross street, 100 feet wide.
24. A street, 50 feet wide.
25. *Extraordinarii equites*, a part of the allied horse to serve in consul's body guard.
26. *Extraordinarii pedites*, a part of the allied foot to serve in consul's body guard.
27. Quarters for strangers coming into camp.
28. A span of 200 feet between tents and rampart.
29. Rampart (*vallum*).
30. Ditch (*fossa*), 9 feet deep, 12 feet wide.
31. *Porta principalis dextra*.
32. *Porta principalis sinistra*.
33. *Porta decumana*.
34. *Porta praetoria*.
35. A transverse breastwork protecting the gates.

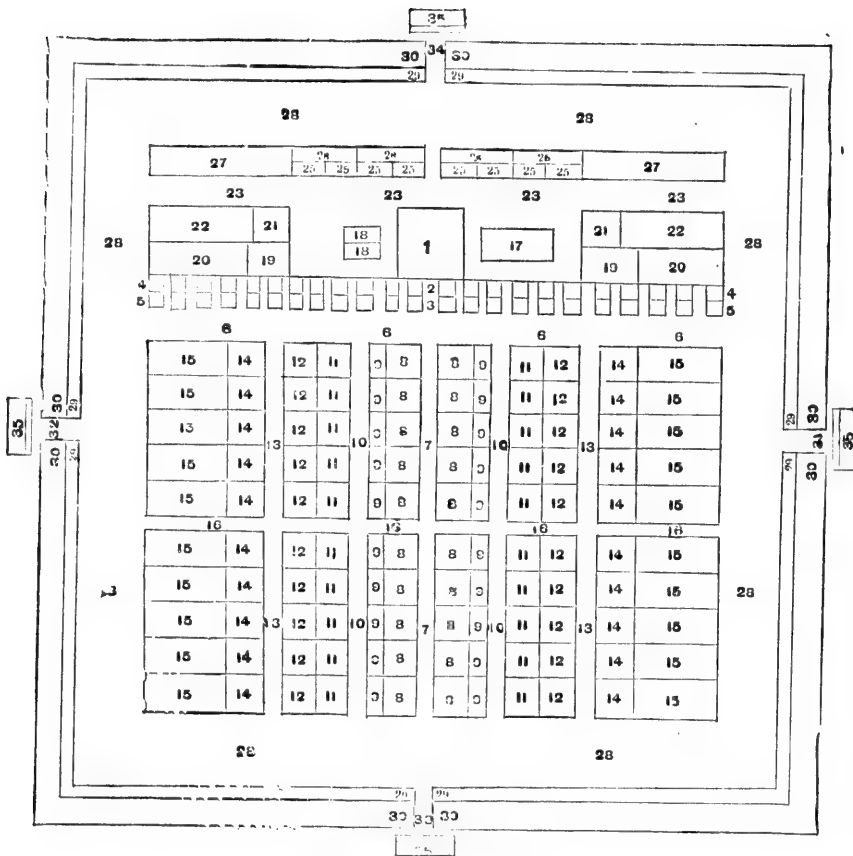


DIAGRAM OF CAMP.

NOTE ON ROMAN HISTORY.

History, or rather chronology, was cultivated in a somewhat crude form by the Romans in the earliest times. From the early days of the Republic the magistrates were required to keep certain records of their doings while in office, and these records formed for many years the sole history of the State. The following may be regarded as the chief original sources from which subsequent history was derived.

(1) *Annales* (i.e. *annales libri*, year books) were records kept by different officers recording the events of the year. Those of the *pontifex maximus* were styled *annales pontificum*, *annales maximi*, and recorded little beyond the eclipses, prodigies and events of a supernatural nature. Most of these records perished in the taking of the city by the Gauls in 390 B.C., but, as far as possible, were replaced and continued down to 133 B.C., when they were discontinued. The *annales consulares*, of which a copy may be seen at the end of Smith's Classical Dictionary, gave the names of the consuls and the wars waged.

(2) *Commentarii sacerdotum* seem to have been a kind of almanac for the benefit of the *priests*, telling for what event each day was noted. We also hear of the *commentarii augurum* kept by the *augurs* for a similar purpose. The *Fasti* of Ovid appears to have been constructed after the manner of these.

(3) *Libri praetorum* were records kept by the praetors.

(4) *Libri lintei* were linen rolls containing historical records. Little is known of these except that they existed in very early times, and are mentioned by Livy as containing an account of the first treaty with Carthage in 509 B.C.

(5) *Tria millia tabularum* contained the acts of the Senate from the foundation of the city till the burning of the Capitol in Vespasian's reign, 79 A.D.

opus civilis legis, collected at different times. These were the documents on which the Roman historians chiefly based their works and

which they consulted. The burning of the city by the Gauls caused the destruction of many important records. This accounts to some extent for the obscurity of the early part of the Roman history.

We may divide the *historical compositions* of the Romans into *three classes* :

(1) *Annales*, (2) *Historiae*, (3) *Commentarii*. The difference between *Annales* and *Historiae* is still a matter of discussion. *Cicero* says that the *Annales* were written in imitation of the *pontifical annals* and were merely memorials of the times, men, places, events, without any ornament, and provided the meaning was intelligible, the chief excellency lay in brevity. The *Historiae* added the ornaments of the orator to the narrative, aimed at descriptions and were varied with speeches and harangues. *Aulus Gellius* says the *Annales* observe the order of the years, narrating under each year the events that occurred in sequence of time, while the *Historiae* did not observe the order of occurrence. *Servius* gives his opinion that the *Annales* were records of events that took place in former days, while the *Historiae* treated of events that took place during the lifetime of the Author. The *Commentarii* were records, or rather notes or *memoranda*. Under this head come Caesar's Commentaries. It is probable Caesar intended to work up and present his in a different form, but, as *Cicero* says, their merit was such in the eyes of the discerning that all judicious writers shrank from the attempt to alter them.

There are *three periods* of Roman history.

(1) The *first extends from the beginning of the second Punic war to the birth of Caesar*. The compositions of this period went generally under the name of *Annales*.

(2) The *second period extended from Caesar's birth to the death of Augustus, 14 A.D.* The *flourishing period* of Roman history is contemporaneous with the development of oratory and poetry. The narratives of the historians are more ornate, the language more refined and the treatment of history better understood.

(3) The *third period may be dated after the death of Augustus*. The only historian of note is Tacitus, who flourished under the fostering care of Trajan. The decay of history was caused by the death of political liberty. All history, as well as all poetry, that was not adulation was treason under the cruel despotism of the successors of Augustus.

The following is a list of the principal Roman Historians :—

NAMES.	FLOURISHED.	WORKS.
Q. Fabius Pictor.	220 B.C.	History of Punic Wars (in Greek).
L. Cincius Alimentus.	220 B.C.	History of Punic Wars (in Greek).
C. Acilius Glabrio.	220 B.C.	History of Punic Wars (in Greek).
M. Porcius Cato.	220 B.C.	Origines.
L. Cassius Hemina.	150 B.C.	Annales.
Q. Fabius Maximus.	150 B.C.	Annales.
C. Fannius.	150 B.C.	Annales.
C. Sempronius.	150 B.C.	Annales.
L. Caelius Antipater.	120 B.C.	Annales.
C. Licinius Macer.	100 B.C.	Annales.
Cn. Gellius.	100 B.C.	Annales.
L. Calpurnius Piso.	100 B.C.	Annales.
Q. Claudius.	100 B.C.	Annales.
Q. Valerius Antias.	160 B.C.	Annales.
L. Cornelius Sisenna.	100 B.C.	Historiæ.
P. Sempronius Asellio.	100 B.C.	Historiæ.
Lucius Luceius.	80 B.C.	History of the Social and Marsic Wars.
Licinius Lucullus.	70 B.C.	History of the Social Wars.
Ælius Tubero.	60 B.C.	Annales.
C. Iulius Caesar.	60 B.C.	Commentarii de Bello Gallico ; de Bello Civili.
Cornelius Nepos.	60 B.C.	Libri Exemplorum.
C. Sallustius.	50 B.C.	Bellum Catilinarium ; Bellum Jugurthinum.
Asinius Pollio.	50 B.C.	History of the Civil War.
Trogus Pompeius.	50 B.C.	Historiæ Philippicæ.
T. Livius.	10 B.C.	Annales.
Velleius Paterculus.	10 B.C.	Historiæ.
Cn. Cornelius Tacitus.	70 A.D.	Historiæ and Annales.
C. Suetonius Tarquillus.	70 A.D.	XII. Caesarum Vitæ.
Q. Curtius Rufus.	100 A.D.	Alexandri Magni Vita.
L. Annaeus Florus.	100 A.D.	De Rebus Romanis.
C. Plinius Secundus.	100 A.D.	De Bello Germano Historiæ.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE TO BELLUM BRITANNICUM.

Britain in the earliest times bore the name of *Albion*, and was visited long before the time of Caesar by Phœnicians, Carthaginians and Greeks for the purpose of obtaining tin.

Roman Connection with Britain (henceforth called *Britannia*) dates from 55 B.C., the year of Caesar's first invasion, to 410 A.D., when the Romans, hard pressed in Italy by the Goths and the Vandals, were compelled to withdraw their forces from Britain in order to defend themselves at home.

Caesar did not occupy Britain. He simply made two military landings for the purpose of completing the subjugation of Gaul by intimidating the British Celts from giving further aid to their Gallic kinsmen. Hence it is that the chapters known as "*Bellum Britannicum*" were written as part of



Caesar's commentaries *De Bello Gallico*. The history of these two landings in 55 B.C. and 54 B.C. comprises Chapters 20-36 of Book IV., and Chapters 8-23 of Book V., *Bellum Gallicum*. We learn from the concluding chapters that the only result of Caesar's invasion was to humble Cassivellaunus, under whom the Britons had temporarily united, and to secure hostages and an annual tribute to be paid by Britain to the Roman people. Caesar withdrew his forces and Britain was not again molested for nearly a hundred years.

Roman Occupation began under the Emperor Claudius in 43 A.D. Forty years later the great Roman general Agricola, after defeating the "large-limbed and red-haired" Caledonians at Mons Grampius, pushed north as far as the Moray Firth. He built a chain of forts between the Clyde and the Forth, and did more than any other Roman general to civilize the Britons.

In 120 A.D., **Hadrian's Wall** was built between the Solway and the Tyne, and this henceforth formed the boundary between Caledonia and the Roman province Britannia. The Roman capital was York (Eboracum). The withdrawal of the Roman military forces in 410 A.D. left the island a prey to pirates from Germany and the North. Hence the advent of the Picts and the Scots, the Angles, Saxons and Danes.

Roman occupation of Britain has left behind many lasting traces. During this period the inhabitants first learned to live in towns and engage in industries. Christianity was first introduced into the island through the medium of the Roman military. Roman roads still stretch in many directions through the island. The ruins of Roman walls and camps are still to be seen in various parts of England, and many geographical names owe their origin to Latin words, e.g., Lancaster, Chester, Lincoln from *castra* and *colonia*. Thus it may be said that Caesar's two demonstrations of Roman power in 55 and 54 B.C. paved the way to the modern civilization of Britain, as exhibited in the *social condition*, the *religion*, and the *language* of the people. Hence the *Bellum Britannicum* must for all time possess a special interest for English-speaking readers the world over.

THE ROMAN EXPEDITIONS TO BRITAIN.

1st Expedition.

55 B.C.—At the close of this year **Julius Caesar** lands, but stays only a few days.

54 B.C.—Caesar again lands, defeats **Cassivellaunus**, King of the Cassi, and penetrates as far as St. Albans.

2nd Expedition.

In consequence of the civil wars from 49 B.C.—31 B.C., Britain was neglected by the Romans. The policy of Augustus (31 B.C.—14 A.D.) was non-aggressive, and Tiberius (14 A.D.—37 A.D.) adhered to the example of his predecessor. Caligula (37 A.D.—41 A.D.) intended to subdue Britain but nothing was done.

43 A.D.—Bericus, a petty king, having been expelled from the island, appealed to **Claudius**, who took up his cause. Aulus Plautius was sent out and defeated **Caractacus** and Togodumnus. Claudius also in person commanded at a victory which he gained near the Thames.

49 A.D.—Ostorius Scapula succeeded, and built a line of forts from the Avon to the Nen. He defeated the Silures and made Caractacus a prisoner.

59 A.D.—Suetonius Paulinus succeeded, and defeated the Iceni and Trinobantes under **Boadicea**.

3rd Expedition.

78 A.D.—**Agricola** succeeds, and reduces Mona (Anglesey).

89 A.D.—He advances as far as the Tay, and defeats **Galgacus**, at the foot of the Grampians or **Mons Grampius**.

After this period the Romans maintained a pacific policy towards Britain.

120 A.D.—Hadrian's wall built and the Romans retire to the south of it.

410 A.D.—The Romans withdraw.

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS IN TRANSLATION.

[N.B. —These lessons are specially designed for beginners in translation who have not had the advantage of an extensive course of exercises in the Introductory Latin Book.]

Lesson 1.

Translate into English.

1. Exigua pars aestatis reliqua est. Caesar tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit.

2. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in his locis maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit

3. Hostibus nostris inde subministrata erant auxilia. Hostibus nostris inde subministrata (esse) auxilia intelligebat.

4. Tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficit ; tamen magno mihi usui erit, si modo insulam adiero, genus hominum perspexero, loca cognovero.

5. Si tempus deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca cognovisset.

(In the above exercise the attention of the learner may be directed to the *ablative absolute*, *accusative with infinitive*, the difference between the *tenses of the infin.* (*subministrata esse* and *fore*), and the more important changes of *person, tense and mood* from Direct to Indirect Discourse.)

Lesson 2.

Translate into Latin.

1. Caesar nevertheless sets out for the island. 2. The Romans were hastening to set out. 3. A small (*parvus*) part of the year remaining, they set out. 4. Although in this place the winter is early, I will nevertheless set out, visit the island and become acquainted with the locality. 5. The time of the summer fails (me) for waging war. 6. The people (not *populus*) of the island have furnished aid to our enemies. 7. Aid has been furnished by the people-of-Britain (*Britanni*). 8. I think that aid has been furnished.

Lesson 3.*Translate Chap. 20, Bk. iv. to erant incognita.***Lesson 4.***Translate into English.*

1. Neque enim praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam. 2. Neque mercatoribus ipsis quicquam praeter oram notum est. 3. Evocat mercatores. 4. Quanta est insulae magnitudo? Magna est insula. 5. Quae nationes incolunt? 6. Quem usum belli habent? 7. Has res reperire non possum. 8. Evocatis mercatoribus, has res reperire non poterat. 9. Quanta esset insulae magnitudo, reperire non poterat. 10. Quanta sit reperire non potest. 11. Magnam esse insulam reperit. 12. His institutis utuntur. 13. Quibus institutis utuntur?

(Observe in this exercise (1) the difference between Direct and Indirect Questions; (2) Sequence of Tense.)

Lesson 5.*Translate into Latin.*

1. The traders are summoned by Caesar. 2. He is unable to find out many things. 3. How great is Britain? 4. He cannot ascertain how great Britain is. 5. He could not ascertain how great it was. 6. How great tribes inhabit (it)? 7. He finds out how great tribes inhabit (it). 8. He found out how great tribes inhabited (it). 9. The Romans cannot find out what customs they use. 10. They were unable to learn what customs these (people) used.

Lesson 6.*Translate the latter half of Chap. 20, Bk. iv.***Lesson 7.***Translate into English.*

1. Ad haec cognoscenda Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. 2. Idoneum esse arbitratus Volusenum praemittit. 3. Huic mandat ut ad se quam primum revertatur. 4. Huc naves ex finitimis regionibus et classem quam superiore aestate effecerat iubet convenire. 5. Translate Chap. 21 to *iubet convenire*.

Lesson 8.

Translate into English.

1. Concilio eius cognito et ad Britannos perlato, ad eum legati veniunt. 2. Legati veniunt qui pollicentur (note the mood) obsides dare. 3. Veniunt ut polliceantur. 4. Legati veniunt qui (=ut ii) polliceantur. 5. Quibus auditis, eos hortatus est ut in ea sententia permanerent. 6. Quibus auditis, hortatus ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit. 7. Una cum iis Commiun, quem ipse regem constituerat, cuius virtutem probabat, cuiusque auctoritas magni habebatur, mittit.

Lesson 9.

Translate Chap. 21 from interim consilio to mittit.

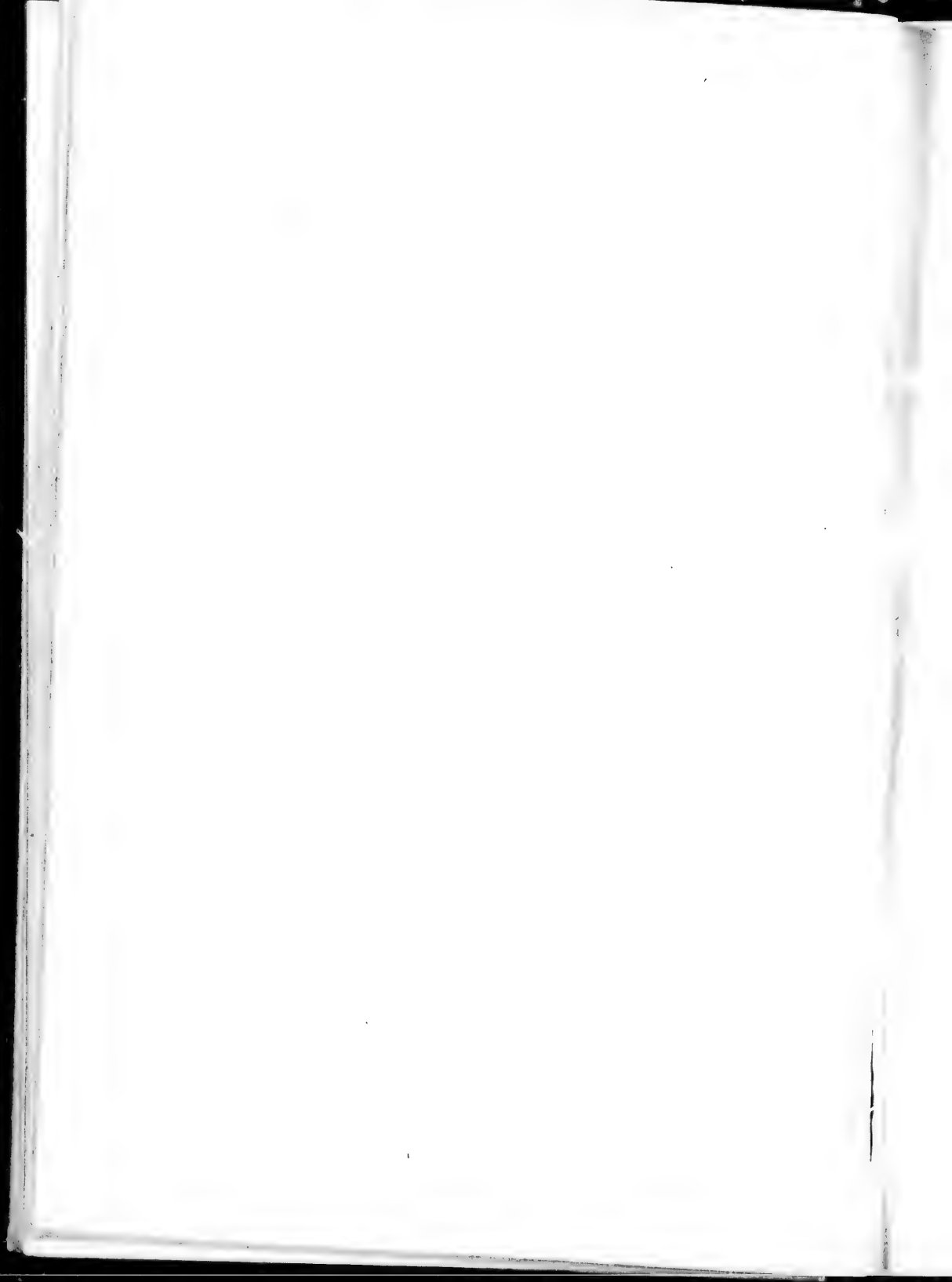
Lesson 10.

Translate into English.

1. Huic imperat (ut) civitates adeat. 2. Adit hortaturque ut populi Romani fidem sequantur. 3. Imperat Caesar Voluseno ut civitates hortetur (note the mood) ut fidem Caesaris sequantur. 4. Ego celeriter eo veniam. 5. Me celeriter eo venturum (esse) nuntia, Volusene. 6. Caesar Voluseno imperat (ut) se celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. 7. Volusenus Caesarem eo venturum (esse) nuntiat. 8. Huic imperat (ut) adeat, (ut) hortetur, (ut) nuntiet. 9. Adit, hortatur, nuntiat. 10. Quae in Britannia perspexisti, Volusene? Ea, Caesar, sunt quae perspexi. 11. Caesari ea quae perspexerat renuntiat. 12. Quae perspexisset (why this mood? See lesson 4) renuntiat.

Lesson 11.

Translate Chap. 21 from Huic imperat to the end.



C. IULI CAESARIS BELLUM BRITANNICUM

LIBER QUARTUS

(BELLUM GALLICUM.)

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

XX.—Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in his locis—quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit—maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intelligebat : et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset : quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent, aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

Caesar determines to invade Britain ; his reasons for crossing.

XXI.—Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Caium Volusenum, cum navi longa praenmittit. Huic mandat, uti, exploratis omnibus rebus, ad se quam primum revertatur : ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transiectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum

Sends Volusenus who returns and reports to him.

bellum fecerat, classem iubet convenire. Interim, consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus eius insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio Populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit, et cum his una Commium—quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur—mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates, horteturque ut Populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus, perspectis regionibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur; quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

Caesar levies
hostages
from the
Morini.

XXII.—Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari, et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti, bellum Populo Romano fecissent, seque ea quae imperasset facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi, propter anni tempus, facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum his obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur quominus in eundem portum pervenire possent. Has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae, legatis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati

non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpitium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

XXIII.—His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi, et naves conscendere, et se sequi iussit: a quibus cum id paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adiici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris expectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque—ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent—ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

and reaches
Britain.

XXIV.—At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsequuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves, propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant; militibus autem, ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illi aut ex arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expediti, notissimis locis, audacter tela conicerent, et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque huius omnino generis

The natives
attack the
Romans.

pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, utebantur.

Caesar's
device; bra-
very of the
standard
bearer of the
10th legion;
Roman ad-
vance.

XXV.—Quod ubi Caesar animum advertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitator, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis incitari, et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis, hostes propelli ac summoverti iussit: quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figura, et remorum motu, et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti, barbari constiterunt, ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret! “Desilite,” inquit, “commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero.” Hoc cum magna voce dixisset, ex navi se proiecit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt: hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsequuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

Rout of the
enemy

XXVI.—Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare, neque firmiter insistere, neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucos circumsistebant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Quod cum animum advertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit, et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consequutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

XXVII.—Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt: obsides daturus, quaeque imperasset sese facturos, polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Several states submit to Caesar. Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata perferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt et in petenda pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem, ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam, paucis diebus sese daturus dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

XXVIII.—His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae Fate of the eighteen cavalry troop ships. cum appropinquarent Britanniae, et ex castris videntur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant perfectae, referrentur; aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo deicerentur: quae tamen, ancoris iactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae, continentem petierunt.

XXIX.—Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit: nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat; et onerarias quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, A storm and high tides wreck Caesar's transports. tempestas afflictabat; neque ulla nostris facultas aut

administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae cum essent—funibus, ancoris, reliquisque armamentis amissis—ad navigandum inutiles, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) totius exercitus perturbatio facta est : neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent ; et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

Conspiracy
of British
chiefs.

XXX.—Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae iusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se colloquuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intelligerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque, rursus coniuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Caesar suspects
their intentions ;
forms plans
accordingly.

XXXI.—At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum, et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat : nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et, quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari iubebat. Itaque, cum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

Sudden at-
tack of the
British.

XXXII.—Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in

castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renuntiarunt, pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et, conferta legione, ex omnibus partibus tela conici, animum advertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituerant: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos, subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant: simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII.—Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae; primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela coniciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum, et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant; et, cum se inter equitum turmas insinaverint, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt, atque ita curru se collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum, in proeliis praestant; ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti, in declivi ac praecipiti loco, incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in iugo insistere, et inde se in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

The British mode of fighting.

XXXIV.—Quibus rebus, perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuit, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra

Caesar acts on the defensive; severe storms keep the Romans within their camp.

legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discesserunt. Sequutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent, et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes demiserunt, paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedica-verunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expul-issent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna mul-titudine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

Defeat and
pursuit of
the enemy.

XXXV.—Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent; tamen nactus equites circiter tri-ginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris con-stituit. Commisso proelio, diutius nostrorum militum im-petum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio sequuti, quantum cursu et viribus effi-cere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde, omni-bus longe lateque afflictis incensisque, se in castra recep-erunt.

Caesar
makes
peace; sets
sail for Gaul.

XXXVI.—Eodem die legati, ab hostibus missi ad Caes-arem de pace, venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit, eosque in continen-tem adduci iussit, quod, propinqua die aequinoctii, infirmis navibus, hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existima-bat. Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariae duae eos-dem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infra delatae sunt.

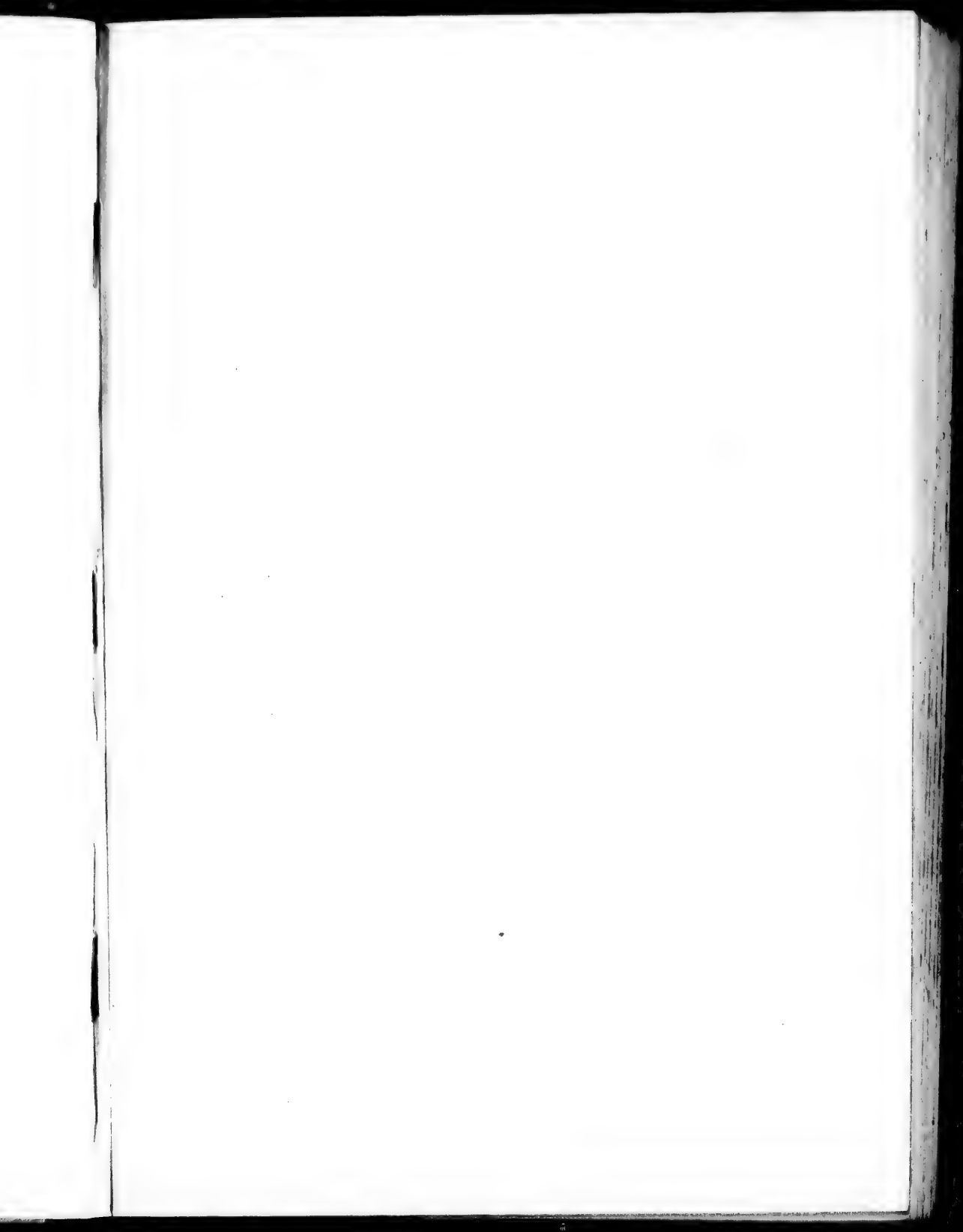
Sudden at-
tack of the
Morini.

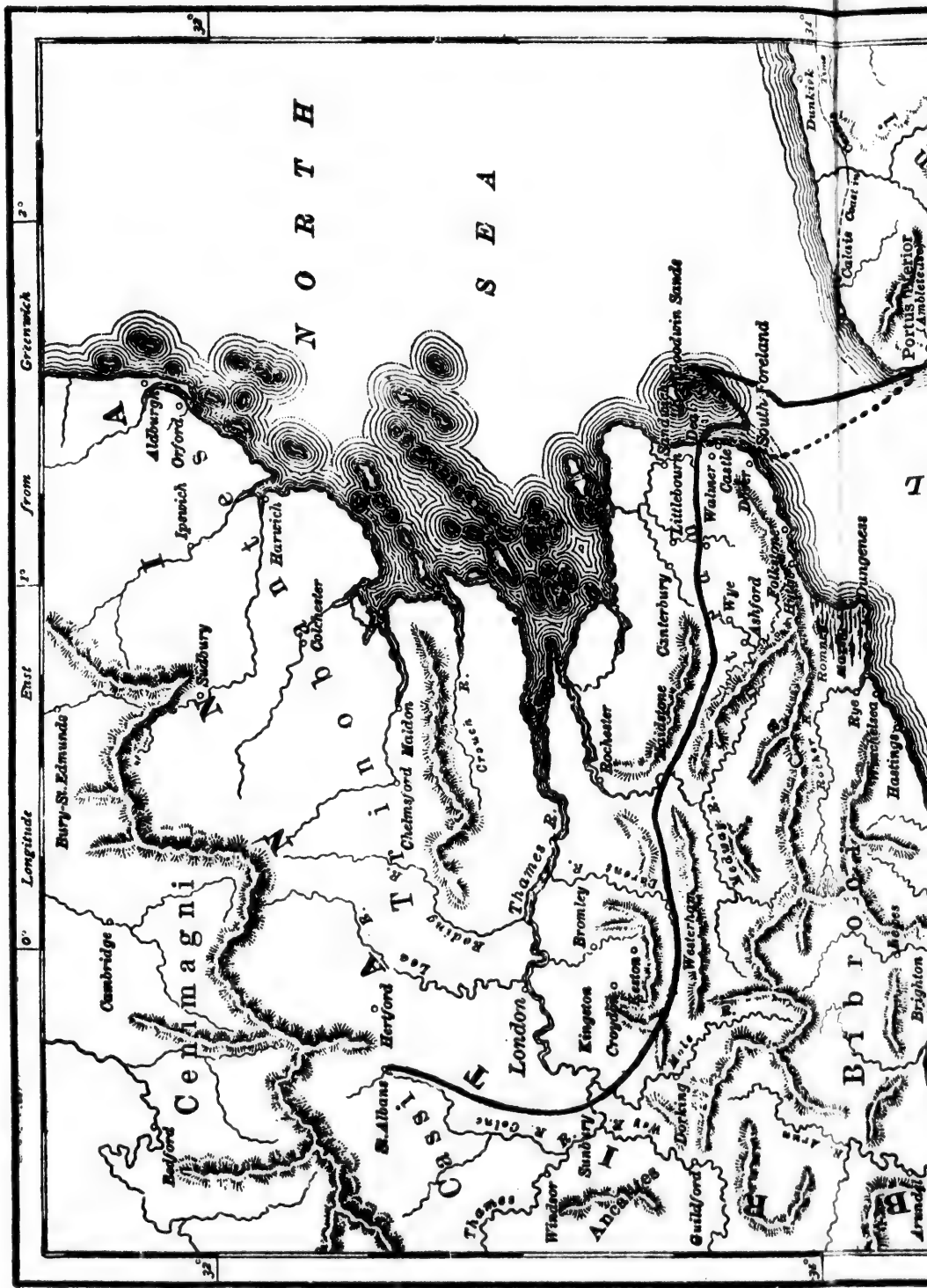
XXXVII.—Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter, trecenti, atque in castra contenderent Morini, quos Caesar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacatos relique-rat, spe praedae adducti, primo non ita magno suo-numero circumsteterunt, ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi, orbe facto, sese defen-

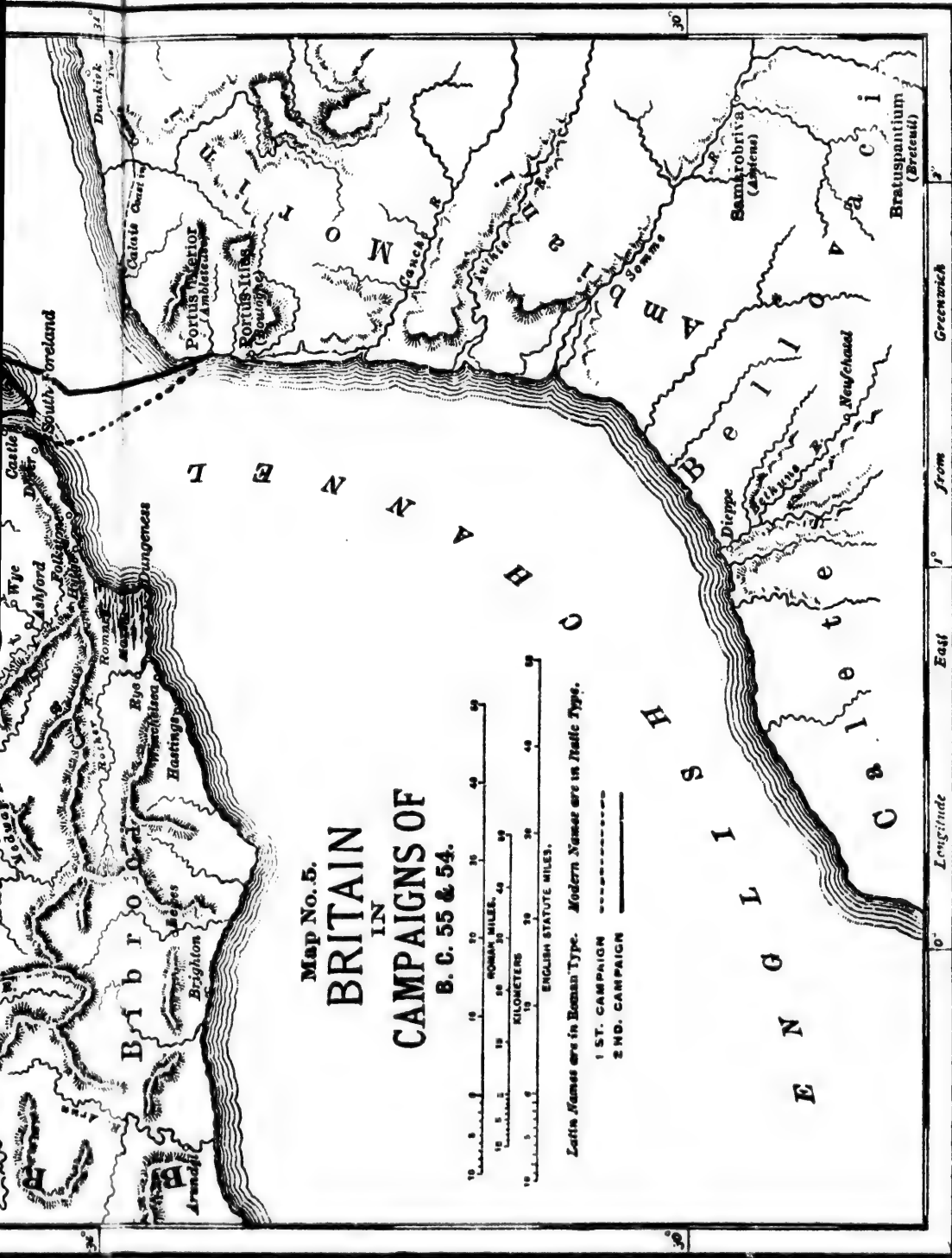
derent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt, et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

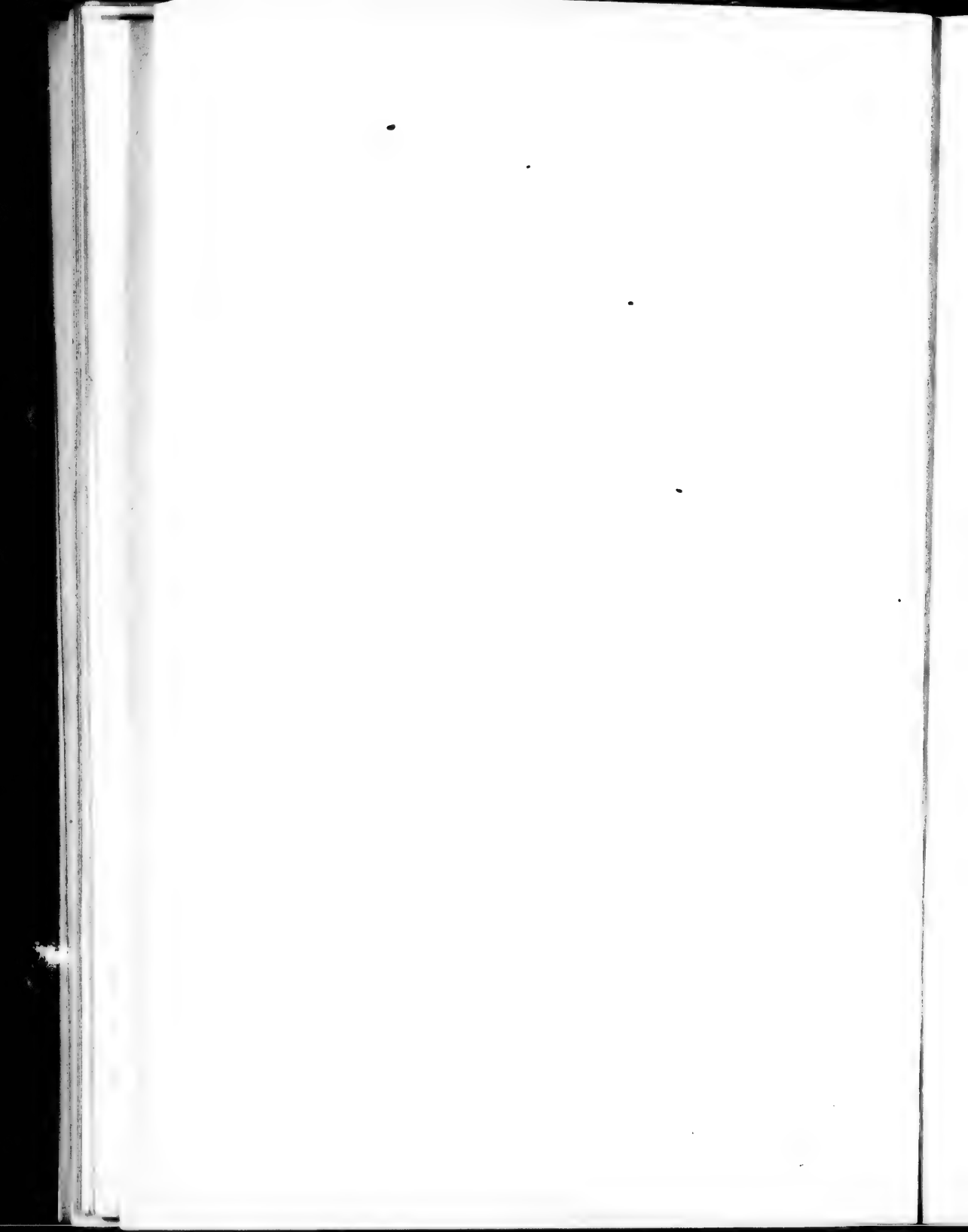
XXXVIII.—Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reducerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent—quo perfugio superiore anno fuerant usi—omnes in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt; reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex literis Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a Senatu decreta est.

Conquest of
the Morini
and Menapii.











C. JULIUS CAESAR.

C. IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
COMMENTARIORUM
LIBER QUINTUS.

CH. 1-7.—CAESAR IN GAUL PREPARES FOR THE 2ND INVASION OF
BRITAIN; WINTER OF 55-54 B.C.

CH. 8-23.—SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.

CH. 24-58.—ATTACK ON THE WINTER CAMPS IN GAUL.

*Caesar leaves directions for building a fleet on the coast. Departs
for Illyricum to quiet the Pirustae, 1. Returns and finds
satisfactory progress. Marches against the Treveri, 2-4.
Caesar, at Portus Itius, prepares to sail, 5. Dumnorix, the
Aeduan, gives trouble and is slain, 6, 7.*

I.—L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio consūlibus discēdens ab
Caesar orders
a fleet to be
built. hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere con-
suērat, legātis impērat, quos lēgionibus praefecerat,
ūti, quam plurimas possent, hieme nāves aedificandas veteresque
reficiendas curarent. Earum mōdum formamque demonstrat.
Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores,

quam quibus in nostro mări uti consuevimus, atque id eo mägis, quod propter crēbras commutationes aestuum mīnus magnos ibi fluctūs fiēri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias impērat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adiūvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves,

The Pirustae
give hostages.

ex Hispānia adportari iūbet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in lōcum convenire iubet. Quā rē nuntiātā Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui dōceant, nīhil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Perceptā oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem addūci iubet; nīsi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituent.

II.—His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citiorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summā omnium rerum inōpiā circiter sexcentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quā paucis diebus deduci possint. Colaudatis militibus, iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter milium passuum triginta a continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum, reliquit. Ipse cum lēgionibus expeditis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Trēvērorum proficiscitur, quod hi nēque ad concilia vēniebant neque imperio parebant Germānosque Transrhenānos sollicitare dicebantur.

The Treveri
and their rival
Chieftains.

III.—Haec civitās longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet cōpias pēditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et

Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit, quaeque in Treveris gererentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per mēdios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed postēāquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēnērunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consūlere non possent: veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mīttit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quō facilius civitatem in officio continēret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam lāberetur: itaque esse civitatem in suā potestate, seseque, si Caesar permetteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

IV.—Caesar, etsi intellegebat, quā de causā ea dicerentur quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterrēret, Cingetorix honored and Indutiomarus offended. tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consōlatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, ūti in officio manēret; nīhilo tamen sēcius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur, eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valēre, cuius tam ēgrēgiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tūlit factum grāviter Indutiomarus, suam grātiā inter suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo grāvius hoc dolōre exarsit.

V.—His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium Caesar prepares to sail. cum legionibus pervēnit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenēre non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, re-

vertisse; reliquas paratas ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invēnit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convēnit numero milium quattuor principesque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpauca, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum lōco secum dūcere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

Dumnorix
gives trouble.

VI.—Erat unā cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causā legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo prēcibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vīdit, omni spe impetrandi ademptā, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos, hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, iusiurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

Death of
Dumnorix.

VII.—Quā re cognitā Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum

98. (g)
 equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Quā re nuntiātā, Caesar intermissā profectioe atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.—CH. 8-23.

Caesar's second landing in Britain. 54 B.C.
 VIII.—His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit et leni Africo proventus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu ortā luce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium peterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

The Britons oppose his march inland.
 IX.—Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli

atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus milia passuum circiter duodecim hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causā iam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumpta, munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

Bad news of
the fleet.

X.—Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte maximā coortā tempestate prope omnes naves adflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Labienus
builds new
ships.

XI.—His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessiri iubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem,

unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summa imperii bellicae administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN.—CH. 12, 13, 14.

The people. XII.—Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoriā proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae causā ex Belgis transierant—qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt—et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaeque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia; pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

The island. XIII.—Insula naturā triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appellantur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus, atque ex Gallia est, in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert

illorum opinio, septingentorum milium. Tertium est contra septentriones ; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc milia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum milium passuum.

Manners and
customs.

XIV.—Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, qua regio est maritima omnis neque multum a Gallicâ differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu ; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasâ praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis ; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

THE WAR CONTINUES.

More fighting ;
a surprise ;
death of a tri-
bune.

XV.—Equites hostium essedariiue acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint ; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo intermisso a spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perpuerunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

British mode
of fighting.

XVI.—Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio

dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

XVII.—Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causâ tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

XVIII.—Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua extarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

XIX.—Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos

iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causâ se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis conflegebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

XX.—Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubratius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubratium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

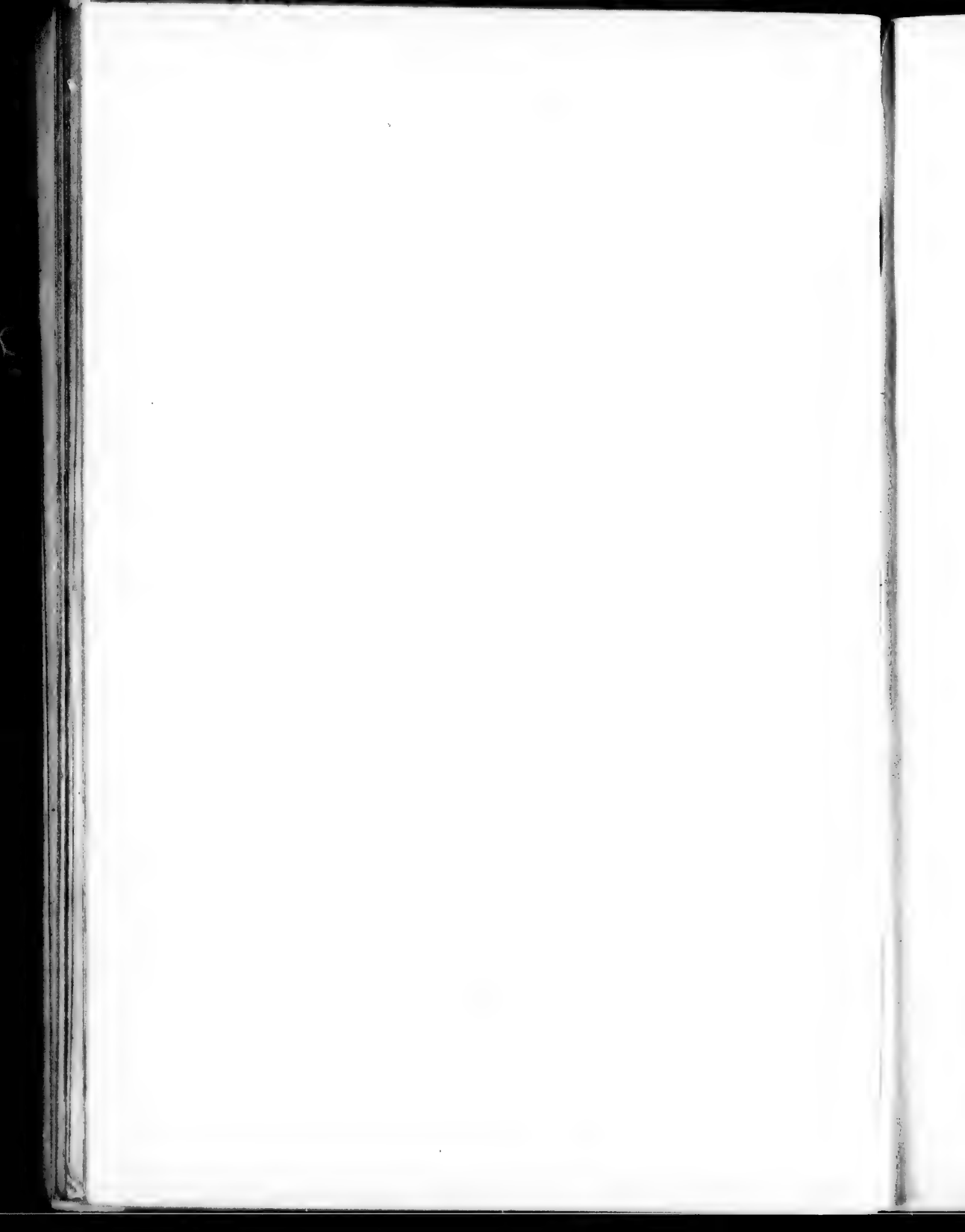
XXI.—Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossâ munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causâ convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

XXII.—Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nuntios mittit atque

his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improvise adorianantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione factâ multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio Cassivellaunus nuntiato tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, treats of peace. maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellexeret, obsides imperat et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

XXIII.—Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad
Caesar returns to Gaul. mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur, at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatûs expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac, summâ tranquillitate consecutâ, secundâ initâ cum solvisset vigiliâ, primâ luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

NOTES.



NOTES

BELLUM BRITANNICUM.

BOOK IV.

N.B.—In the grammatical references, F.L. means First Latin Book; P.L., Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former, the numbers refer to *pages*; of the latter, the Roman numerals refer to the *part* of the book, and the Arabic to the *sub-section*.

CHAPTER XX.

exigua—reliqua: “though but a small part of the summer remained”: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85, (o).

etsi—hiemes: “though in this district the winters set in early, because all Gaul slopes to the north.” Note that *etsi* in Caesar occurs with the present, imperfect or pluperfect indicative in Caesar, but never with the subjunctive. The word *Britannia* is derived from the Keltic *brit* or *brith*, “painted,” from the custom of the inhabitants staining their bodies: B. v., 14. In the old Welsh poems the island is called *Prydom* and the people *Brython*. The name *A.bion* was also given to it: (cp. Aristotle de Mundo 3), which may be derived from *alp*, “white” or “high.”

septentriones: the seven stars in the constellation of the Great Bear. The word is from *septem*, “seven,”—*trio=strio*, “a star”: cp. Sanscrit *tārā=staras*, “stars,” literally, “strewers of light”: cp. English *star*; German *stern*.

quod—intelligebat: cp. B. III., Chapter IX., where he mentions the fact that the *Nanneles* and *Vneti* sent to Britain for aid in carrying on their wars against the Romans. Dion Cassius says that Caesar’s motive was simply to be the first Roman who invaded the island. Suetonius attributes the expedition to avarice, mentioning the pearl fisheries as the inducement.

bellis Gallicis: “in the wars against the Gauls”: probably an ablative of time or the ablative within a point of time, or *in* may be omitted.

inde=ex Britannia.

si—deficeret: “even though the time of the year would prevent him from carrying on a regular campaign”: for the subjunctive of *oblique narrative* see F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 106.

magno usui: "of great advantage": F.L. 134, 1; P.L. III., 82, (c). The frequent allusion to the conquest of Britain in the subsequent literature of Rome shows how popular such an expedition was.

si—cognovisset: the clauses introduced by *si* are really the subject of *fore*. Note the *asyndeton* in *loca, portus, aditus*.

Gallis: there can be no doubt that Caesar is wrong here; cp. his statements in B. III., Chapter VIII.: *naves habent Veneti plurimas quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt*.

neque=quisquam: "for not a single person goes there without a purpose." Note the emphatic position of *quisquam*. Zumpt says, p. 280: "*temere* means, properly, *at random*, opposed to *consulto*, deliberately. Joined with *non*, *temere* acquires (but not in Cicero) a peculiar significance = *non facile*." This has the backing of the Greek paraphrast who translates this οὐ ῥαδίως. If this is so, translate, "for it is no easy matter for any one to go there."

Gallias: the divisions of Gaul are meant. In Caesar's time these were *Gallia Cisalpina* and *Gallia Transalpina*. Augustus (B.C. 27) divided Gaul into *Narbonensis*, *Aquitania* *Lugdunensis*, *Belgica*.

esset: dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99 (d).

incolerent: scil. *eam*.

nationes: gens (Greek *φῦλον*) was a nation sprung from a common origin: *natio* (Greek *ἔθνος*) was a subdivision of the *gens*.

maiorum navium: he refers to the transports (*naves onerariae*).

CHAPTER XXI.

priusquam—faceret: "before he made the attempt": when does *priusquam* take the indicative and when the subjunctive? F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III., 99, (f), IV. Note the original meaning of *periculum*: cp. Greek *πειρα*, *πείρασθαι*.

Caius Volusenus: see note B. III., Chapter v.

navi longa: see note B. III., Chapter ix.

mandat: distinguish in meaning, *mandare*, "to charge," in consequence of a thorough confidence of the person entrusted with a commission (cp. Greek *ἐμπέσθαι*): *inhere*, "to bid," merely in consequence of one's own wish or will, in opposition to *vetare* (cp. Greek *κελεῖν*): *imperare*, "to command," by virtue of military supreme authority (cp. Greek *ἀρχειν*).

Morinos: "into the country of the Morini." The *Morini* were "the dwellers on the sea": see note B. III., Chapter IX. They occupied the district from the *Scaldis* (now Scheldt) on the east to the *Samara* (now Somme) on the west. Their chief town was *Gesoriacum*, afterwards *Bonnonia* (now Boulogne). The *brevissimus traiectus* is, of course, the Straits of Dover which is 21 miles in width between Dover and Calais.

Veneticum bellum: see B. III. This war was carried on B.C. 56.

eius = *Caesaris*.—*perlatō*: "having been reported."

qui polliceantur = *ut ei polliceantur*: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. III., 99, (a), 1.

dare: rarely do we find a present infinitive and an omission of pronouns with verbs of *promising*: F.L. 110, 1; P.L. III., 101, ii.

liberaliter pollicetur: "making kind promises to them."—*domum*: F.L. 85, 1; P.L. III., 88, (g).

Atrebatibus superatis: the *Atrebates* a people of *Gallia Belgica* occupied what was once called *Artois* (probably a corruption of the name), but now named *Pas-de-Calais*. Others say that Arras (Flemish *Atrecht*) is a corrupt form of the name. They were defeated by Caesar at the river *Sabis* (now Sambre). A portion of them, after their defeat, crossed over to Britain and settled in Berkshire on the Thames. It is quite probable that Caesar may have been influenced in sending Commius to Britain by the fact, that he being king of the *Atrebates* on the continent would also exercise an influence over his countrymen in Britain.

magni—*habebatur*: "was highly esteemed": *magni* is the genitive of value: F.L. 150, 2; P.L. III., 81, (g).

huic = *Commiō*.

possit, scil. *adire*.—*adeat*: F.L. 96, 2; P.L. II., 95. Often *ut* is omitted after *mando*: cp. B. III., Chapter III.: *huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat*.

eo = *in Britanniam*.

ut—*fidem sequantur*: "to join the side of": literally, "seek the protection of."

seque: construe *imperatque huic ut nunciet se (Caesarem) celeriter venturum esse eo*.

perspectis regionibus: "after ascertaining the nature of the country": B. III., Chapter VII.: *cognoscere regiones*.

quantum—potuit: “as far as his means allowed him.”—*facultatis*: partitive genitive: literally, “as much of opportunity as.”

qui=quippe qui: “inasmuch as he”: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 99, (g).

navi egredi: “to disembark”: cp. ἐκ νῆος ἐκβαίνειν. Caesar uses both *navi egredi* or *ex navi egredi*.

perspexisset: dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99, (d).

CHAPTER XXII.

dum—moratur: note that *dum*, expressing time merely, meaning “while” always takes the *present* indicative except in B. VII., 82, even when the principal verb is evidently *past*.

qui excusarent: “to offer the following excuse for their past conduct”: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. III., 99, (a), 1. This refers to the events narrated in the previous book; Chap. XXVIII.

nostrae consuetudinis: he refers to the mercy shown by the Romans to those who yielded to their power.

Populo Romano: dative of the object, “against the Roman people.” There is implied a hostile relation in *bellum facere*: cp. μάχεσθαι τινι.

seque: construe *legatique venerunt, qui pollicerentur se facturos ea quae imperasset*.

hoc—accidisse: “this was a tolerably good streak of fortune.” For another meaning of *accidit* see note B. III., Chapter II.

quod—volebat: the indicative as giving Caesar’s own reasons.—*post tergum* “behind him.”

has—anteponendas: “this business consisting of such trifles”: for descriptive genitive: F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81 (e).

Britanniae=traiectui in Britanniam: “to his expedition to Britain”: This condensed mode of expression (*brachylogy*) is common in Greek and Latin poetry: κόμμι χαρίτεσσιν ὁμοίαι: “hair like (the hair of) the graces”: So Shakespeare Coriolanus, Act II.: sc. 2, 21: *his ascent is not so easy as those who, etc.*

quibus adductis eos: *quibus* referring to the hostages: *eos*, to the Morini.—*in fidem*: “as a pledge” that the Morini would carry out their agreement.

coactis—contractisque: "having been collected and mustered."—*coactis* has the idea of collection under compulsion: *contractis* implies only their assembling.

quicquid—habebat: "all the ships of war he had besides." Note the use of *quicquid navium=omnes naves*: cp. Hor. Epist. 5, 1: *at Odcorum quicquid in coelo regit*: Livy, 3, 9: *per quicquid deorum est*.

huc—accedebant: "here were to have joined them." The imperfect expresses sometimes an *unfulfilled* intention: F.L. 216, 3, note 1; P.L. III., 191 (b).

ab—octo: "at the distance of eight miles." We sometimes find *ab* with the ablative of distance, and generally it is so used when the place is not mentioned, but understood from what precedes. Zumpt (§ 396) inclines to the idea that in the mind of the speaker the place is mentally governed by the preposition. We also find the same idiom in Greek: ἀπὸ σταδίων εἰκόσιν τῆς πόλεως.

quo minus=ut eo minus: goes with *tenebantur*, a verb of hindrance: F.L. 185, 2; P.L. III., 99, 1., 1

Q. Titurio Sabino. Sabinus and Cotta were *legati* of Caesar, and seem to have been highly esteemed by their commander. They perished in an ambushade planned by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones: B. v., 37. When these two are mentioned, the name of Sabinus comes first: B. iv., c. 38; B. v., c. 24; B. v., c. 52; B. vi., c. 32; but in B. vi., c. 37, the name of Cotta occurs first. Sabinus was probably the senior officer and higher in command, though both are styled *legati*.

Menapios: a people of *Gallia Belgica* who inhabited both sides of the Rhine. Their chief town was *Castellum Menapiorum* (now Kessel).

CHAPTER XXIII.

his constitutis rebus: express this in other ways.

tempestatem: "weather": a general term either good or bad according to the context.

tertia vigilia: the night was divided by the Romans into *four* watches, each of which would average three hours. Caesar would set out about midnight. It was generally held that the date was the 26th August. As to the port from which Caesar sailed many conflicting opinions are held. Mr. Airy, the Astronomer Royal, contends that Caesar started from the

estuary of the Somme, and landed at the beach of *Pevensy*, on the coast of Sussex, near the spot where William the Conqueror disembarked eleven centuries afterwards. Mommsen favours the idea that the infantry embarked at *Ambleuse* (which he identifies with *portus Itius*), and the cavalry at *Wissant*, east of Cape *Gris-Nez*; (Hist. of Rome, IV., 7). Strabo also gives *portus Pius* for the first expedition. Others say that the infantry started from *Gesoriacum* (*Boulogne*) and the cavalry at *Ambleuse*.

solvit, scil. *naves*: "he set sail": for the omission of *naves*: cp. Cic. de Off. III., 12, 50: de Murena, 25; cp. the Greek expression αἰεὶν ναῦσι, or ναῦς.

equites—progređi: so that they might embark in the eighteen ships that were windbound.

naves—conscendere: "to embark": cp. ἐπιβαίνειν ναῦσι, or εἰσβαίνειν εἰς νῆας. With *conscendere* we have either *navem* or *in navem*. In the same way Tacitus uses *ascendere*: Ann II., 75.

cum—administratum esset: the subjunctive after *cum* gives a reason for his starting with the cavalry.—*id*: refers to the embarkation of the cavalry. They were detained by stress of weather since they did not start till the 30th of August.—*tardius*: "too slowly": F.L. 56, 55.

hora—quarta: as sunrise would be shortly after 5 a.m., he would reach Britain about 9 a.m. Dr. Halley thinks that Caesar landed at *Deal*; D'Anville says at *portus Lemanis* (now *Lymne*), a short distance below Dover, while Mr. Airy gives *Pevensy* on the Sussex coast.

pr mis: "the vanguard."

expositas: here in the sense of *collocatas* or *instructas*. Elsewhere in Caesar *exponere* means (1) to disembark or (2) to point out, explain.

adeo—angustis: "so close to it."

in litus: "to the water's edge": cp. Celsus (Dig. 50, 16, 96): *litus est quosque maximus fluctus a mari pervenit*.—*litus*=Greek λιμήν: *ripa*=Greek ὄχθη, the bank of a river: *ora*=Greek ἀκτὴ, the bank of land on the water.

ad—egrediendum, scil. *ex navibus*: see note B. IV., Chapter XXI.

nequiquam idoneum: "altogether unsuited": *litotes*.

dum—convenirent: F.L. 201, 4; P.L. III., 99, (f), iii.

in ancoris expectavit: a pregnant construction for *naves ad ancoras deligavit et expectavit*: "he cast anchor and waited."

legatis—convocatis: as the *imperator*, *legati*, *tribuni*, *militum* and *primipilus* formed the council of war, Caesar may here refer to its being called.

cognosset—vellet: dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99, (d).

monuitque: followed by the clause *ut postularent* which is also followed by the clause (*ut*) *administrarentur*. The construction is loose and very doubtful Latin. With the reading the full construction is: *monuitque (ut) omnes res administrarentur ab iis ad nutum et ad tempus ut rei militaris ratio*, etc.: "he warned them that everything must be done with strict regard to the signal and the time, since military practice and especially maritime affairs required this, inasmuch as these latter had a rapid and ever-changing movement": for the omission of *ut*: F.L. 181, 3; P.L. III., 124, 27, f., R.—*ut quae*: F.L. 196, 4; P.L. III., 99, (g), iii.

sublatis—ancoris: "having weighed their anchors": cp. αἰρεσθαι τὰς ἀγκύρας.

constituit: "he moored": cp. ἐπ' ἀγκύρας ὀρμεῖν.

ab eo loco: from Dover, probably towards the northeast.

aperto ac plano litore: between Walmer Castle and Deal.

CHAPTER XXIV.

at: generally denotes a change in the narrative.

essedariis: the word *essedum* or *essedā* is from the Celtic *ess*, "a chariot." It seems to have been used by the Gauls and the Germans, as well as by the Britons, cp. Verg. Georg. III., 204; Cic. ad Fam., 7, 6; Phil., 2, 58. It appears to have resembled the *δίφρος* of Homer, but to have been heavier, and open in front as well as behind. The *aurigae* mentioned in Chapter XXXIII. seem to have been the masters, while the fighting was done by the *clientes* or retainers. The word *essedarii* includes both *aurigae* and *clientes*: cp. Tac. ag. 12: *auriga honestior: clientes propugnant*. This was the reverse of the Homeric method, where the driver (ἡνίοχος) was regarded as a mere attendant (θεράπων), while the warrior (ἥρως) was the chief man.

quo—genere: this statement does not harmonize with that of Tacitus (Ag. 12): *in pedite robur: quaedam nationes et curru procliantur.—consuerunt= consueverunt*: see note B. III., Chapter I.

requis—subsequuti: "following close with the rest of the forces": cp. II., 19; II., 11, where *cum* is used. "It must be observed, as an exception,

that the ancient writers, especially Caesar and Livy, in speaking of military movements, frequently omit the preposition *cum*, and use the ablative alone." Zumpt, 437.

ob has causas : "for the following reasons." Note that *hic* refers to *what follows* as well as to *what precedes*. With the former it is equivalent to the Greek τοῦτ' οὗτο, ὅδε, and the latter to οὗτος, τοιούτος.

quod - poterant : giving Caesar's own reason. What would *possent* mean?

militibus autem—cum illi : the order of the clauses is inverted. The second should come first, since *autem* = *δέ*, and *cum* = *μέν*. For the case of *militibus* : F.L. 173, 4 ; P.L. III., 152, 105 ; of *locis* : F.L. 85, 3 ; P.L. III., 161, 125, (a).—*oppressis* of course agrees with *militibus*, "weighed down." Translate : "the soldiers, moreover, weighed down with a great and heavy burden of armour, were compelled at one and the same time to leap down from the ships." The arms of an ordinary soldier (*miles legionarius*) were (a) *defensive*, consisting of a shield (*scutum* or *clipeus*) ; a helmet (*galea*) : a coat of mail (*lorica*) ; greaves (*ocrea*) : and (b) *offensive*, a sword (*gladius*) ; two javelins (*pila*).

omnibus—expediti : "having none of their limbs burdened with armour."

pedestribus proeliis : "in battles by land" : cp. *pedestres navalesque pugnae* : Cic. de Senec, 5 : *pedestria itinera* : Caesar, B. III., 9.

CHAPTER XXV.

Quod—advertit : the usual construction with *animum advertere* in the classical period is, *animum advertere ad aliquam rem* or *alicui rei*. The construction with two accusatives, one being a pronoun, *id, hoc, illud*, etc., is ante-classical and though it occurs in Caesar and Sallust is really *archaic*. Cicero uses the form of *animadvertere* which Caesar also uses.—*quod* may be taken as (1) the accusative of specification or (2) as governed by the preposition in composition.

naves longas : see note Chapter IX., B. III.

species : (cp. εἶδος) "appearance," embracing size, colour, shape, etc. : *figura* signifies "outline." The Britons like the Veneti (B. III., Chap. XIV.) were unaccustomed to see large vessels propelled by oars.

motus expeditior : "the speed of which rendered them more suitable for service."—*ad usum* = *ad navigandum*.

ad latus apertum : "on their unprotected flanks." This expression means

here "the right": so in B. II., Chap. XXIII.; B. VII., Chap. LXXXII. The *clipeus* or *scutum* protected the left.

fundis—tormentis: the slingers (*funditores*) and the archers (*sagittarii*) belonged to the class of the *velites*, or light armed infantry. The inhabitants of the Balearic islands supplied the former while the Cretans supplied the archers. By *tormenta* Caesar refers to the *catapulta*, *balista*, and *scorpiones* formed on the principle of the cross bow for hurling darts and stones against the enemy.

propelli ac submoveri: "to be driven off and dislodged": an example of *hysteron proteron*.

magno usui: note B. IV., Chap. XX.

paulum modo: "just a little," "only a short distance."

atque: at the beginning of a new sentence *atque* is rare and marks a strong contrast between what follows and what precedes: "and then."

cunctantibus: abl. absolute. Curtius distinguishes the roots in *cunctor*, "to hesitate": (connected with *ὀκνεῖν*); *cunctus* (= *convinctus* or *coniunctus*), "whole," "all"; and *percontor*, "to enquire" (connected with *contus*, *κόντρος*) "a punt pole."

qui aquilam ferebat = *aquilifer*: "the eagle bearer." A bronze or silver eagle (*aquila*) was adopted by Marius in his second consulship (104 B.C.) as the standard of the legion. The standards of the *cohortes* were called *signa*, and seem to have been different for the different cohorts of the same legion. A figure of victory, a round ball, a hand and other emblems were used. The standard of the cavalry was a kind of banner called *vexillum*. The honour of carrying the eagle belonged to the first centurion of the first manipule of the *triarii*. He was called *primi pili centurio* or *principilus*, and he had an oversight over the other centurions. Along with the *tribuni militum*, *praefecti*, *legati* and *imperator* he formed the council of war. He held the rank of an *eques*.—*decimae legionis*: the tenth was evidently Caesar's favourite legion: cp. B. I., Chap. XL: *huic legioni Caesar et propter virtutem confidebat maxime*. The legions were numbered *prima*, *tertia*, etc., according to the order of enlistment.

contestatus deos: the Romans entered upon every important undertaking with an appropriate *formula* of prayer to the deity or deities likely to aid them.

ea res: "his undertaking."—*commilitones*: "comrades."

nisi vultis: F.L. 210, 1; P.L. III., 99, (h). To lose the standard was

always looked upon as most disgraceful, especially to the standard-bearer, since it was a violation of the military oath (*sacramentum*), which bound the soldier "not to desert their standard through a desire to escape or through fear, nor leave their ranks": Livy, 22, 38. To animate the soldiers the standard was sometimes thrown among the enemy: Livy, III., 70; II., 59, VI., 8.

officium praestitero: "shall perform my duty." The future perfect has here the force of a quickly completed future action.

magna: "loud." —*inter se*: "each other."

aquilam ferre: "to advance." Explain the phrases *signa inferre*: *signa referre*: *signa convertere*: *signa castris efferre*: *ad signa convenire*.

dedecus: "disgrace," *i.e.*, the loss of the eagle.

universi: "in a body," "to a man."

ex navibus: the ships nearest the enemy, composing the first line.

CHAPTER XXVI.

pugnatum est: F.L. 164, 2, note 2; P.L. III., 72, (h). Note and account for the position of *acriter*.

nostri tamen answered by *hostes vero*. We should have expected *hostes vero* first followed by *nostri tamen*, but the order is often inverted as in Chapter XXIV.

quod—poterant: as giving Caesar's own reason. What would *possent* mean?

alii—*aggregabat*: literally, "one from one ship, another from another, collected around whatever standard he chanced to meet." For the construction of *signis*: F.L. 120, 2.

singulares: "one by one": rarely used in the plural.

plures paucos: note the vividness of the asyndeton: construe *plures hostes circumstitebant paucos Romanos*.

alii: we should have expected *alii* before *conspexerant* to balance *alii* here.

adoriebantur—*circumstitebant*—*coniciebant*: note the force of the imperfections: F.L. 216, 3, note; P.L. III., 291, (b).

ab latere aperto: see note B. IV., Chapter XXV. For the use of *ab*: cp.

ab hostibus, "on the side of the enemy": *a fronte*; *ab oriente*; *a nobis stare*.

quod—animadvertisset: see note B. IV., Chapter XXV.

scaphas—navium: "the cutters belonging to the men-of-war."—*scapha*: cp. Greek σκάφη, σκάφος from σκάπτω, "to hollow out."

speculatoria navigia: "the spy-boats," built specially for quick sailing.

laborantes: "in distress."

simul—constiterunt: "as soon as they set foot on dry land."—*simul*=*simul ac*, or *simul atque*.

suis: "their comrades."—*longius*: "to any great distance": see note B. IV., Chapter XXIII.

capere: "to reach." They were at *Wissant* or, some say, at *Ambleteuse*, unable to sail on account of a storm: cp. Chap. XXVIII.

ad pristinam: i.e., in this respect alone his success was incomplete.

CHAPTER XXVII.

de pace: "to treat for peace."

obsides daturus, scil. *se esse*: B. IV., Chapter XXI.

imperasset=*imperavisset*: subjunctive of *oratio obliqua*: F.L. 306, 4; P.L. III., 106.

quem—praemissum: the plupf. affects *praemissum*: "who, as I previously mentioned, had been sent forward."

cum—perferret: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 99, g, ii.—*oratoris modo*: "as an ambassador": cp. *ritu*, *more*, *ratione*.

imprudentiam: "rashness," "thoughtlessness."—*ignosceretur*: F.L. 164, 1; P.L. III., 96, b, ii.

quod intulissent: Caesar assumes here an air of injured innocence.

dum ultro p'tissent: "since they had presumed to ask."—*continentem*, scil. *terram*: cp. ὑπέρρος, scil. γῆ.

partem—partem: "some—others."

paucis diebus: "within a few days": F.L. 82, 2; P.L. III., 85, (b), iii.

principes: subject of *coeperunt*.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

his rebus : "by these measures" : instrumental ablative.

post—ventum=quarto die postquam in Britanniam venerunt : note the double construction : *diem quartum* is governed by *post* as if *post* were a preposition, though it is really a part of the conjunction *postquam* : cp. *ante diem quartum Kalendas Januarias*. Since the Romans reckoned both days in an expression of time, this expression would be equivalent to our "three days after." Caesar set sail at midnight on the 26th of August, and landed on the coast of Kent about 10 a.m. August 27th, and the cavalry started on the 30th of the month. Dr. Halley calculates that the moon mentioned in the beginning of the next chapter was full on the night of the 30th. Note the varieties of expression for *post diem quartum quam* : *post quatuor dies quam* : *quatuor diebus postquam* : *quarto die postquam* : *quarto die quam* with *post* omitted.—*est ventum* : F.L. 164, 2 ; P.L. III., 96 (b).

supra : Chapter xxv.

sustulerant : "had taken on board."

leni vento : "with a light breeze" : properly an ablative absolute : "the wind being mild." The *portus superior* where the cavalry had been weatherbound was Ambleuse.

solverunt : "set sail" : here said of the ships themselves, although the word is generally used with reference to the crew.

ex castris viderentur : "and were visible from the camp." It is probable that Caesar's camp was pitched on an elevated spot, not far from the shore.

sed : construe *sed (tanta tempestas subito coorta est ut) aliae referrentur eodem*.—*eodem* : "to the same spot."

aliae—deicerentur : "(while) others were driven down."—*propius* : construed here with the accusative, as is usual in Caesar : B. IV., 9 ; V., 36. It may also be construed with a dative or an acc. with *ad*.

magno—periculo : "with great peril to themselves" ; *sui* is an objective genitive after *periculo*.

quae—petierunt : "while they, in spite of the fact that their anchors had been dropped, were nevertheless (*tamen*) filling with waves, putting out of necessity into the high seas in the teeth of night they made for the continent."—*quae* : join this with *cum*.—*tamen* opposed to *ancoris iactis*.—*adversa nocte* : abl. abs. : F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. III., 130, 48.

CHAPTER XXIX.

eadem nocte : the night of August 30th.

qui dies—consuevit : we might expect *quo die luna consuevit*. The construction is loose, and the sentence should be divided into two for an English translation. "It unfortunately happened on the same night that the moon was full. On the day when this happens the moon is wont to cause very high tides on the ocean." Another reading for *qui dies* is *quae nostrisque* : scil. *militibus*. The influence of the moon on the tides seems to have been known to Cicero : cp. *de Divin.* 2, 14 : *quid de fretis aut de marinis aestibus dicam ? cum accessus et recessus (flow and ebb) lunae motu gubernantur*. This work of Cicero did not appear, however, till 44 B.C., eleven years after the invasion of Britain. The rise and fall of the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible : hence the ignorance of the Romans respecting it. At Dover it rises to the height of 19 ft., at Boulogne to 25 ft.

uno tempore : "at one and the same time."

exercitum—cuaverat : "had had the army brought across." The meaning of the gerundive with *curo* is peculiar. It does not mean *necessity*, but supplies the place of the present participle passive ; that is, it has the meaning of a continued passive state : cp. B. I., 12 : *pontem faciendum curat* : B. V., i. : *naves aedificandas curarent*. With the infinitive *curo* is generally limited to negatives.

quasque—complebat=et eas naves quas in aridum subduxerat aestus complebat. Note that *subducere naves* is "to haul up" on shore, opposed to *deducere naves* "to launch."

onerarias—afflictabat : "and the storm kept dashing together the ships of burden which were riding at anchor." With *onerarias*, scil. *naves*. Note the force of the imperfect *afflictabat* as well as of the *frequentative* : F.L. 216, 2 ; P.L. III., 191, 199.

neque—dabatur : "nor was an opportunity afforded our men of managing (the vessels) or of lending aid."

compluribus—fractis : "after the wreck of several vessels." Express this in other ways.

cum—inutiles : "since the others were unseaworthy owing to the loss of their ropes, anchors and other tackling."—*funibus—amissis* : causal abl. abs. The *funes* (Gk. *σχοῖνα*) were strong ropes by which the anchors were held or the cables by which the ships were fastened to the shore. The ropes of the rigging were called *rudentes* (Gk. *τορτία*).—*armamentis* : see note B. III., Chapter XIV

magna: note the emphasis given to this word by its separation from the noun.

id quod—accidere: "as was unavoidable": literally, a thing which could not *but* happen."—*quod accidere*: the acc. with the inf. is the subject of *necesse erat*.

quibus reportari possent=ut eis reportari possent: subjunctive of result.
—*quibus*: abl. of instrument.

usui: dative of purpose: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. III., 82 (c).

et—erat: "and because it was generally understood that they had to winter in Gaul, corn had not been provided in these places for the winter."

omnibus constabat: literally, "it was agreed by all." Instead of the dative *omnibus* we also find *constare inter omnes*: B. VII., 44, 47.—*in hic mem*: when predetermination of future time is meant, the Latins use *in* with acc. Translate: "he called the Senate for the next day": "he called the Senate on the next day."

CHAPTER XXX.

quibus rebus cognitīs: express this in other ways.

principes: subject of *duxerunt*.

inter se collocuti: "talking with one another": F.L. 223; P.L. III., 91.

cum—intelligerent—cognoscerent: "when they understood—observed."
—*intelligere* denotes a rational discernment by means of reflection: *cognoscere*, to learn by the senses.

hoc: "on this account," "for this reason," explained afterwards by *quod*: causal ablative: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. III., 85 (m).

impedimentis: distinguish *impedimenta*, baggage of the legion: *sarcina*, of the individual soldier.

optimum factu: literally, "the best thing in the doing," *i.e.*, the best course. The supine in—*u* is the abl. of respect.

rebellione facta: "after the renewal of the war." Express this in other ways.

frumento commeatuque: "from corn and other supplies": abl. of separation: see note B. III., Chapter III.: F.L. 158, 2, (i); P.L. III., 85, (h).

rem—producere: "to drag along the war": cp. *rem trahere*; *bellum protrahere* or *extrahere*.

his superatis—interclusis: equivalent to conditional clause = *si hi superati essent—interclusi essent*.— With *reditu*: cp. B. I., 8.: *commeatu prohibere*.

coniuratione facta: “forming a league”: here used in a good sense: cp. *coniurant*: see note B. III., Chapter VIII.

rursus = re versus: “back again” from peace to war.

paulatim: “little by little”: opposed to *universi*.

deducere: i.e., to this place where they were going to make war, from the interior to the sea coast: note the force of *de* in *deducere*: cp. *κατα κατὰ γειν*.

CHAPTER XXXI.

cognoverat: “was familiar with”: note the plupf. of *cognosco* has the force of an imperf. and the perf. that of a present: F. L. 145, 1; P. L. III., 72.

ex eventu navium: “from what had happened to his ships.”

fore—suspiciabatur: “suspected that that would happen which actually did.” The foresight of Caesar was one of his most prominent characteristics.

subsidiâ: “resources,” literally, “succours.” Elsewhere *subsidiâ* in Caesar means: (1) “reserves,” “relieving forces”: (2) “the act of bringing relief”: B. VII., 86.

quotidie: “daily,” expressing simple repetition: *in dies singulos*, said of things daily increasing or decreasing: cp. note B. III., Chapter XXIII.

quae naves, earum = earum navium quae.—*naves*: antecedent expressed in relative clause.

ad eas res = eis rebus: “for these purposes.”

administraretur: impersonally, “it was carried out”: i.e., his directions were carried out.

duodecim—amissis: concessive, “though twelve ships had been lost.”

reliquis—effecit: literally “he so arranged that it might be suitably sailed with the rest.”—*reliquis* may be either (1) ablative instrument or (2) ablative of accompaniment.

CHAPTER XXXII.

dum geruntur: see note Chapter XVII., B. III.

frumentatum: “on a foraging expedition”: F. L. 174, 3; P. L. III., 105.

ad id tempus: “up to this time.”

ulla suspicione interposita: "any suspicion having arisen": F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 85, (o).

hominum: "inhabitants": here = *Britannorum*.

ventitaret: "continued to come": note the force of the frequentative. So we have *actito* (from *agere*); *lectito* (from *lego*); *scriptito* (from *scribo*); *haesito* (from *haerere*); *visito* (from *video*). How are frequentatives formed? F.L. 303, (a); P.L. III., 75, iii.

in statione: "on guard": called *stationes*. For the gates of a Roman camp see plan (introduction p. xxv.)—*stationes* were properly guards at the gates of the camp: *excubiae*, guards by day or night: *vigiliae*, night guards only; *custodiae*, guards to defend the fortification. The guard was inspected by *circuitoires*, and changed every three hours, *i.e.*, at the end of each watch.

quam consuetudo ferret: "than was usual"; "than custom admitted of."—*ut* is omitted after *quam*. For another reason for subjunctive: F.L. 195, 3; P.L. III., 99, (g).

in ea parte—in quam partem: the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause is frequent in Caesar, and occurs when distinctness is required. In rendering into English omit the antecedent in the relative clause: see note Chapter I., B. III.

id quod erat suspicatus: scil. *esse*. The indic. *erat* is used because the words are inserted by the writer and are not dependent on *suspiciatus*. Note that *id* is used merely for emphasis as in Cic. de Off. 2, 6: *male se res habet, cum quod virtute effici debet, id temptatur pecunia*.

aliquid novi consilii: "some new plan": literally, "something of a new plan": partitive genitive.

in stationem succedere: "to take their place on guard." Note the idea of motion conveyed by the Latin *succedere* and hence *in* with accusative.

confestim: "immediately." Note the emphatic position of the adverb. It is connected with the same root as in *festino*, "to hasten."

aegre sustinere, scil. *hostes*: "with difficulty were keeping the enemy in check." Compare the adverb *aegre*.

conferta legione: the ablative absolute denotes the cause of their being under a cross-fire: "in consequence of their being crowded together."

nam quod: "for since."—*nam* is taken with *delituerant*: while *quod* is joined to *erat*.

noctu : cp. *diu*, *interdiu*, *dudum* (= *diu-dum*) : old ablatives.

tum—perturbaverant : “then suddenly attacking (our men) scattered, after they had laid aside their arms, and were busy in reaping, they (*i.e.*, the enemy) threw the rest into confusion, after slaying a few, since the ranks were irregular.” With *dispersos*, scil. *nostros milites*.—*armis dispositis* : express this in other ways.

equitatu atque essedis circumdederant : scil. *nostros*. Express this by another construction.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

ex essedis : an adjective attributive of *pugnae* : “of the chariot fighting.”

pugnae = *pugnandi* : cp. B. I., 28 : *genus hoc erat pugnae*.

primo : “at first.” Both *primo*, and *primum* means, “for the first time” : *primo*, also means “at first” : *primum*, “firstly.”

ipso—equorum : “by the sheer dread caused by their horses” : ablative of instrument. What genitive is *equorum*?

strepitu : “rattling” : cp. Claudian Epigram IV. : *essedae multisonora*.

ordines, scil. *hostium*.

insinuaverint : future perf. indic. : literally, “they shall have made their way.” In English we would say, “they have made their way.”

pedibus : “on foot” : F.L. 71, 3 ; P.L. III., 85 (e).

aurigae : see note B. IV., Chapter XXIV.—*interim* : refers to a momentary space of time : *interea*, implies continued duration.

illi : refers to the retainers (*clientes*) : see note B. IV., Chapter XXVI.

praestant : “secure.”

tantum—efficient : “they became so proficient by daily experience and practice.”

in—loco : “when the ground is sloping and even steep.” Since the verb *sum* has no present participle in use, the prepositional ablative absolute is used for it. For the use of *ac*.

brevi, scil. *tempore* : “in a short time” ; “in a moment” : cp. ἐν βραχεί, scil. χρόνῳ.

per temonem : “along the whole length of the pole.” According to Max

Müller (Science of Language, Vol. II., p. 402), *tegmo*=*temo*: connected with *tignum*. Varo (L. L. VII., 78), derives it from *teneo*, as *holding* the yoke.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

quibus rebus: some take this as a causal ablative: "and owing to these facts." Others supply *permotus* or *adductus*. Others again take them as ablative absolute: "when matters were in this state." Others make *rebus* the ablative of cause depending on *perturbatis*, or as a dative depending on *tulit*.

namque: cp. *καὶ γὰρ*: "and (this was evident) for." *Namque* in Caesar and Cicero is usually used before a vowel and always the first word of a proposition.

eius adventu: "on his arrival": ablative of time when.

quo facto: concessive abl. abs.: "though this was done."

ad lacessendum, scil. *hostes*: "for provoking the enemy to battle": others take *lacessendum* a gerundive with *proelium*: "for provoking a battle."

alienum: "unfavourable.—*alienus* is rarely applied to things and when it is, it is opposed to *suus* or *opportunus*: cp. *locus suus*: "ground of his own choosing," i.e., "favourable ground."

suo—loco: for the omission of *in*: cp. B. IV., Chap. IV.

brevi—intermisso: "and a short time having elapsed": F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85 (e).

dum—geruntur: see note B. III., Chapter XXVIII.

continuos dies: acc. of duration of time: P.L. 69, 9; F.L. III., 83 (c). —*continuus* denotes an unbroken succession: used (1) of time, as B. I., 48; V., 13; (2) of disaster, B. VII., 14.

tempestates: see note on B. IV., Chapter XXIII.

quae—continerent = *tales ut—continerent*: F.L. 188, 4, 5; P.L. III., 99, (b).

praedicaverunt: "openly boasted." Distinguish *praedīco*, *praedīco*.

praedae faciendae: "of securing booty." The phrase does not occur elsewhere in Caesar.

in perpetuum : either supply *tempus* or *perpetuum* in neut. adj. used as an abstract noun : "for ever" : cp. *εἰς αἰδιον*.

si—expulissent : "if they should succeed in driving out" : the pluperfect denotes the accomplishment of the expulsion, and the subjunctive is used because of the virtual *oratio obliqua* in *demonstraverunt*.

daretur : "was offered" : dependent question : F.L. 176, 2 ; P.L. III., 99, (d).

his rebus : "by these representations," to their countrymen.

CHAPTER XXXV.

idem : subject of *fore* and explained by the appositive clause *ut—effugerent*.—*effugerent* : means, they had escaped in the past and would do so in the future.

triginta : some commentators give CCC : others, XXX. The MSS., however, the latter.

diutius : join this word with *non* : "they could no longer stand."

quos = et eos : F.L. 232, note ; P.L. II., 195.

tanto spatio—potuerunt : "for such a distance (as far) as speed and strength allowed." Others take *spatio* as ablative absolute : "the distance being so great."—*cursu et viribus* : literally, "by running and strength" : ablative of instrument.

occiderunt, scil. *nostri milites*. Distinguish in meaning *occiderunt* and *occliderunt*.

omnibus—incensis : "all the property far and wide being destroyed and burnt."—*affligere = solo aquare* : "to level to the ground." Another reading is *aedificiis incensis*.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

his—duplicavit : *duplico* follows the construction of *impero* by analogy.

quem ante imperaverat : see B. IV., Chapter XXVII

in continentem : "to the continent" : see B. IV., Chapter XXVII.

propinqua—aequinocitii : "as the day of the equinox was near" : ablative absolute. The date of the equinox was September 24th. This remark shows how stubbornly the Britons opposed Caesar's advance. He landed on the 27th of August, and though he had been nearly a month attempting

to gain possession of the island, we find him still at the sea shore.—*dies* is feminine here, as it usually is, when it means *time* generally or in the sense of a *fixed* or *appointed* day : cp. *die constituta*, *die dicta*.

infirmis—*existimabat* : literally, "he did not think that the voyage ought to be exposed to a storm, his ships being unseaworthy," *i.e.*, "he did not think that he on his voyage should run the risk of encountering a storm, seeing that his ships were unseaworthy."—*infirmis navibus* : ablative absolute or some say ablative of instrument with "unseaworthy ships," not a dative of agent with *subiciendam*.—*hiemi* : dative of indirect object governed by *subiciendam* : cp. B. VII., 77: *et perpetuae servituti (Galliam) subicere*.

eosdem—*portus* : Boulogne or Ambleuse.

paulo sunt : were carried down the channel below *Gesoriacum* (Boulogne), perhaps as far as the modern Etaples.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

ex navibus—*expositi*, scil. *in terram*. This refers to the *duae onerariae*.
proficiscens : "in the act of setting out" = *cum proficisceretur*.

praedae : *praeda* = *prae-hend-a* or *prae-hid-a* : root HEND, Greek *χαρ* or *χαρδ-άω*, "to seize" : cp. *praedium* = *prae-hendium*.

non ita : "with not so very large a number" : instrumental ablative. This use of *ita* is limited like the English *so* to negative clauses : cp. B. v., 47 ; *non ita multum moratus*.

circumsteterunt, scil. *eos* : the three hundred.

nollent : F.L. 206, 6 ; P.L. III., 199, 214, (2). The *obliqua oratio* is implied in *iusserint*.—*orbe facto* : "having formed themselves into a circle." In Sallust (Jug. 97) we have a detailed account of this movement. The baggage was placed in the centre, and the soldiers, facing the enemy, formed a circle round it. In cases of extreme danger this movement was resorted to : cp. B. v., 33, where *Ambiorix* attacked Cotta and Sabinus.

celeriter : note the emphatic position. What would be the usual position ?

ad clamorem : "at the shouts" : *ad* either means "in answer to," "in accordance with," or goes with *convenerunt*.

suis auxilio : "as a help to his men" : F.L. 134, 1 ; P.L. III., 82, (c).

amplius quatuor horis. What would be the ordinary construction ? F.L.

69, 9 ; P.L. III., 83, (c). For the ablative : cp. B. VII., 9: *longius triduo*, B. IV., *longius anno*.

paucis vulneribus : "having sustained a trifling loss."

postea vero quam = *posteaquam vero*.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Morinos : see note B. IV., Chapter XXI.

siccitates : the plural may mean either the continued dryness or the dryness in many different marshes. Compare this statement with what Caesar says in B. IV., Chap. XXXIV. These two statements hardly agree.

quo se reciperent non haberent : "did not know where to retreat to." With *habeo* : cp. ἐχω. The subjunctive would represent a subjunctive in the direct narrative : *quo me recipiam* ? "Where am I to retreat to ?" So with a past tense : *quo me reciperem non habebam*.

quo—*perfugio* : "which as a refuge." It is best to make *perfugio* an example of an antecedent attracted into the case of the relative since it is in the same clause, or make the object of *haberent*, *locum* and *perfugio* a dative of purpose. Caesar probably refers to the marshes on the *Scheldt* : cp. B. II., Chap. XVI., for similar conduct on the part of the Aedui.

superiore anno : B.C. 56 ; B. III., Chap. XXVIII.

quod—*abdiderant* : "because the Menapii had all concealed themselves by taking refuge in the thickest woods." What would be the meaning if *in silvis* had been the reading ? Cp. B. II., Chap. XVI : *qui in silvis abditi latebant*.

neglexerunt : scil. *hoc facere* : cp. B. III., Chap. XXVII : *ultimae nationes hoc facere neglexerunt*. Dion Cassius gives this as a reason for Caesar's second invasion of Britain.

his rebus gestis : "owing to these exploits" : causal abl. abs.

ex : "in accordance with" :—*dierum viginti* : genitive of description : F.L. 130, 7, 8 ; P.L. III., 156, 115.

supplicatio : the word may be either day of thanksgiving for national success, or a day of humiliation for national disaster. When a general gained a victory he sent a letter wreathed in laurels (*litterae laureatae*) to the Senate. If the victor deserved it, a thanksgiving (*supplicatio*) was usually appointed, which generally lasted several days. The thanksgiving for Caesar's victory over the Belgae was held for fifteen days, an honour which Caesar says no one had obtained before : B. II., Chapter XXXVII. The thanksgiving for his victory over Vercingetorix also lasted twenty days : B. VII., Chap. XC.

NOTES.

BOOK V.

N.B.—In the grammatical references, F. means First Latin Book; P., Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former, the numbers refer to *pages*; of the latter, to the *sections* of Part III., except where otherwise indicated.

CHAPTER I.

Lucio Demitio, Appio Claudio consulibus: abl. abs.: F. 102, 3. Note: P. 85 (o). The *et* is often omitted between the names of consuls in this phrase. The year was A.U.C. 700; B.C. 54. The Romans marked their year by the names of the consuls in office; the Athenians by the name of the chief archon, hence called ἀρχων ἐπώνυμος; the Spartans by the first of the Ephors; the Argives by the priestesses of Juno.

ab hibernis: among the Belgae: B. IV., c. 38.

in Italiam=*in Galliam Cisalpinam*. Caesar as proconsul could not leave Gaul without the permission of the Senate. Italy Proper did not include, *Liguria, Gallia Cisalpina* and *Illyricum*. Caesar generally spent his winters at *Luca*, a town on the borders of Italy Proper. "Here he could hold easy communication with his partisans at home. Lucca during his residence was more like a regal court than the headquarters of a Roman Proconsul. At one time 200 senators were counted among his visitors; 120 lictors indicated the presence of the numerous magistrates who attended his levees. Both Pompey and Crassus came here to hold a conference with him." Liddell's Hist. of Rome, p. 663.

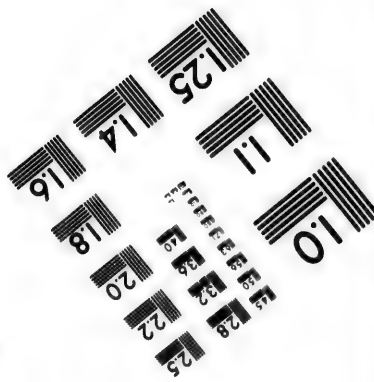
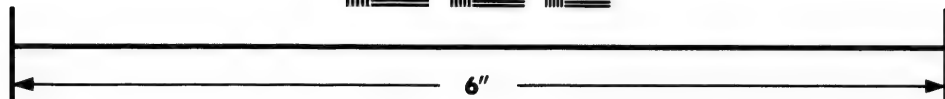
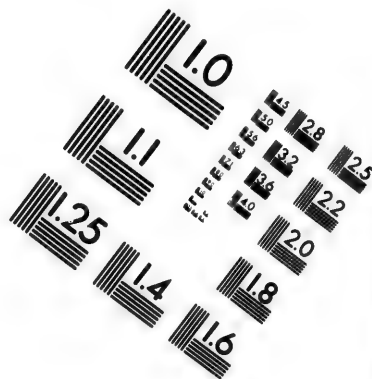
consuerat=*consueverat*: note that *consuevi, memini, odi, coepi, novi* are perfects with a present meaning, the pluperfect having the meaning of an imperfect: hence, "was accustomed."

legatis: Caesar put a *legatus* over each legion.

quam plurimas: generally explained by *tam plurimas quam illi possent plurimas facere*. For *possent* see F. 206, 4; P. 106.

modum formamque: the former applies to "the shape" generally, the latter to "the form" particularly.

subductiones: "hauling up" on land, or "beaching"; cp. B. IV., c. 29: *in aridum subduxerat*. The plural is used, for more than one vessel is referred to. The word *deducere* is applied "to take down" the vessels to the sea.



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.5
1.6
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0

10
11
12

humiliores sc. *naves*: the vessels were more flat than usual, with less elevation above the water, and with less depth of hold.

in nostro mari: the Mediterranean. So Plato (Phaedrus, 113, A.) calls the Mediterranean ἡ παρ' ἡμῖν θάλασσα. The classical meaning of *mediterraneus* is "inland" i.e., "far from the sea."

id eo magis, scil. *facit*: "he does this the more for the following reason."

minus magnos: the waves in the channel were shorter than in the ocean, not for the reason that Caesar gives, but because of the narrowness of the channel, the varied character of the coast, and the meeting of opposing currents.

ad onera—transportandam: with *onera* supply *transportanda* implied in *transportandam*.

maribus: said to be the only example of the ablative plural of *mare*. The plur. here refers to different parts of the Mare Internum or "Mediterranean."

actuarias predicate: scil. *naves*. These were vessels propelled by oars and sails.

feri: what is the usual construction after *imperat*? F. 181, 3; P. II., 27.

usui: dative of purpose: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c).

ad armandas naves: "for rigging out the vessels" cp. *ὀπλιζειν* in Greek: Hom. Od. 17, 288: *νῆες ὀπλιζόμεναι*. He may refer to the fact that Spain supplied broom plant for cables, and metal for anchors.

conventibus: the proconsul held assizes or courts of justice in the principal cities of the province. In public or important causes he generally acted as judge, but in minor matters he delegated this power to his *quaestor* or to the *legati*. For convenience the provinces were divided into circuits (*conventus*).

Provinciae: Caesar's province.

Galliae citerioris: trace on the map *Gallia citerior* and *Gallia ulterior*. — *imperat*: what two meanings has *impero* and what two constructions? Translate, *militibus imperat*: *milites provinciae imperat*.

qui doceant = ut ei doceant: F. 184, 1; P. II., 25.

paratos—satisfacere: "that they were ready to make amends by all reasonable means for their wrong doing." The infinitive after *paratus* for the gerund or gerundive with *ad* is irregular. Zumpt explains the infinitive in such cases as the present by supposing that *paratus esse* equivalent to a single verb as *volo* which takes the infinitive.

eos i.e. obsides.

ad certam diem: when predetermination of future time is used we often find *ad* with accusative. Translate: *ad posterum diem senatum convocat*: *postero die senatum convocat*. It is rare that *dies* is feminine in such a case.

nisi—fecerint: the time of the verb is considered with reference to the act implied in *persecuturum*.

arbitros dat: "he appoints assessors." These *arbitri* based their decisions on equity. —*litem aestimare*: "assess the costs." —*poenam*: to be paid by the *Pirustae* over and above restitution.

qui=ut ei: see above *qui doceant*.

CHAPTER II.

revertitur: generally *reverti* is to return on one's journey: *redire* after the journey has been finished.

inde=ex Gallia citeriore. Long estimates that Caesar must have travelled over 2,000 miles. In the beginning of the year he left his army in Belgium, passed through Transalpine Gaul, held court in Cisalpine Gaul, went to Illyricum and settled disputes there, returned to Belgium in May or June.

cum: explain fully the force of *cum* with indic. and subj.: F. 203; P. 99 (f), v.

in—inopia: since the verb *sum* has no present participle, the prepositional ablative absolute is often used for it: cp. B. IV., c. 33., *in declivi ac praecipiti loco*: B. I., 33., *in tanto imperio*: B. II., 22., *in tanta iniquitate*. Translate here: "although they were in the greatest scarcity of all materials."

cujus: here *quod* would be more correct. Though the relative is often attracted into the case of its antecedent in Greek, it is not so common in Latin: yet we have in Hor., Sat. I. 6, 15, *judice quo nosti*: Ter. Heaut. I., 1, 36, *hac quidem causa qua dixi tibi*. Others explain the construction=*cujus generis naves*.

instructas: "fully rigged"; others read *constructas*.

neque—possent: literally: "and that they were not far from being able to be launched within a few days," i.e. "and that they were almost ready for launching within a few days." Note the redundant negative contained in *quin*: F. 185, 2, and 188, 6; P. II., 156-158.

paucis diebus: time within which is expressed by the abl. or by *intra* or *inter* with acc.: F. 82, 2; P. 85 (b).

collaudatis: bring out the force of *con* in translation.

quid velit: dependent questions are put in the subjunctive: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

portum Itium: probably *Boulogne (Gesoriacum)* is meant. At the head of the harbour of Boulogne there is a small French village by the name of *Isques*. Others say *Ambleteuse*; others still say *Wissant*.

quo ex portu : often the antecedent is expressed in the relative clause.

milium triginta : a Roman *passus* was a double step from the toe of the left to the toe of the right, *i.e.*, two steps, and measured 4 ft. 10½, so that a Roman mile would be 1,000 *passus* or 1618 yards.

huic rei : "for carrying out this object."

expeditis : "unencumbered with baggage," opposed to *impeditis*.

CHAPTER III.

haec civitas : *i.e.* of the Treveri.

plurimum—valet : "is the most powerful." Strictly *plurimum* is a neut. cognate acc. used adverbially.

supra : B. II., 24 ; III., 11.

Indutiomarus was opposed to the Romans. Caesar induced the leading men of the state to side with *Cingetorix*, the son-in-law, but rival of *Indutiomarus*. The latter took up arms against the Romans, but was slain by Labienus : B. v., 7.

alter : *Cingetorix*. Distinguish *alter* and *alius*.

cognitum est—venit : since the action expressed by *cognitum est* would be over before that expressed by *venit*, it would be natural to expect the pluperfect, *cognitum erat*. The Latin idiom, however, with *ut primum, quum primum, simul ac, simul atque*, all meaning, "as soon as," requires the perfect historical, not the pluperfect as might be expected from the succession of the actions indicated by these conjunctions.

gererentur : subjunctive of dependent question : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99 (d).

cogere, join this with *instituit*, "set about collecting."

isique : the *-que* joins *cogere* and *parare*.

Arduennam : the word is from the Keltic *ar-denn*, "the deep," or from *ard*, "hard," and *venna*, "a pasture" : now the forest of *Ardennes*, a vast forest in the N. W. of France and Belgium. The forest of *Arden* at Stratford is part of the same wood.

ingenti magnitudine : abl. of description : F. 131, 9 ; P. 85 (c).

nonnulli : distinguish in meaning *nonnulli* "some" : *nulli non*, "every" ; so, also *non nemo, nemo non* ; *non nunquam, nunquam non. non nusquam, nusquam non*.

privatim : "individually."

civitati consulere : distinguish in meaning *consulere aliquem, consulere alicui, consulere in aliquem*.

veritus ne : F. 185, 3 ; P. II., 154.

sese : oblique narration is often introduced with *dixit* or some similar word omitted. Give rules for *oblique* narration : F. 205-209 ; P. 106. Change this into *direct* narration.

quo facilius : why not *ut facilius* ? F. 183, 5 ; P. II., 26.

laberetur : literally "might fall off" from their allegiance, i.e., "might revolt."

in sua potestate : "at his mercy."

CHAPTER IV.

dicerentur : subjunctive of dependent question : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99 (d).

evocaverat scil. *Caesar*.

in officio : "in allegiance."

nihilo tamen secius : "none the less however." The comparative *secius* is rare because the positive *secus* has a comparative meaning. *secus* is from *sequor* and primarily means "after," then "less," so that *nihilo secius* means "less by nothing," i.e. nevertheless.

quod—valere : "because he was of opinion that this was done by him (Caesar), not merely according to the deserts of this one (*Cingetorix*), but also he thought it was of great advantage that the influence of that one should be very great among his own countrymen." Note that *quum—tum* = *et—et.—merito* : F. 71, 3.—*magni* : F. 150, 2 ; 166, 3 ; P. 81 (g).

perspexisset : virtual *oblique* narrative, hence subjunctive in dependent clause : F. 206, 4 ; P. 106. It may be explained as causal subj., *cum* = *cum eius* : F. 198, 4 ; P. 99, (g) iii.

graviter tulit : "greatly annoyed."

qui=quippe qui : "whereas he had already been" : F. 198, 4, Note : P. 99, (g) iii.

inimico animo : abl. of description : F. 131, 9 ; P. 85 (c).

hoc dolori : "at this grievance." —*exarsit* from *exardesco*.

CHAPTER V.

Meldis : the *Meldi* or *Meldae* were a people bordering on *Gallia Belgica*. Their territory lay at the junction of the *Sequana* (*Seine*), and the *Arar* (*Marne*).

revertisse : in the present and derived tenses *revertor* is the form : in the perfect and derived tenses the active form alone is used in the ante-Augustan writers. Distinguish in meaning *revertor*, to return on one's way, and *redco*, to return after attaining one's object.

obsidum loco : when joined with the genitive, *loco* has a semi-prepositional force, "instead of," "as." So we have *in numero* : cp. *criminiis loco*, "as a charge," *praemii loco*, "as a reward." It seems a substitute for the dative of purpose, which, however, is restricted to semi-abstract nouns.

quod—verebatur : when does *quod* take the indicative and when the subjunctive? F. 198, 2 ; P. 99 (g), i.

quum—abesset : when does *quum* take the indicative and when subjunctive? F. 203 ; 188, 3 ; 196, 7 ; P. 99 (f), (g) and (i).

CHAPTER VI.

Dumnorix had conspired against the Romans in 58 B.C., and was pardoned by the entreaties of his brother Divitiacus (B. I., 20). Fearing that he might a second time stir up strife, Caesar desired to take him to Britain. His name is said to be derived from *domun-rig*, "king of the world."

antea : B. I., 3, 18.

in primis : "particularly."

quod—cognoverat : give the syntax of *quod* : F. 198, 2 ; P. 99 (g), i.

eum, scil. *esse*.

animi—auctoritatis : genitive of description : F. 130, 7, 8 ; P. 81 (e).

accedebat huc : "there was the further consideration that," literally, "to this was added that." The subject of *accedebat* is the clause *quod dixerat* and *sibi deferri* is in apposition to *quod* governed by *dixerat*.

graviter ferebant : as the Aedui annually elected a magistrate called *Vergobretus*, so called from the Keltic *Feor-go-breith*, "a man for judging," or *Guerg-breath*, "strong in judgment," they naturally were annoyed that this right of election had been taken out of their hands : B. I., 16. Caesar (B. VII., 33) states that the person holding this office could not leave the state during his term of office, and that no person could be elected, if a living member of the family held the post.

neque : "and yet—not."

recusandi—causa : "to protest or urge any plea against it."

quod timeret : gives not Caesar's reasons but those of *Dumnorix* : "because, he said, he feared." F. 198, 2 ; P. 99, (g), i.

religionibus : "religious scruples." The root—*LIG* (cp. *ligare*), points to the binding or constraining force of the unseen world.

id : the request to be left behind.

sevocare : "to hold secret meetings" : from *se*, *vocare* to call apart to some spot.

coepit : what verbs are perfect-present? F. 145 ; P. 72 (a), (b). Explain the construction in *principes sollicitari coepti sunt* ; *principes sollicitare coepit*.

territare : either a historical infinitive or supply *coepit*. Bring out the force of the *frequentative*. F. 303 (b) ; P. 75, iii.

feri, scil., *dixit*. Note the *litotes* in *non sine causa*.

nobilitate : abl. of separation. F. 158, 2 ; P. 85 (h).

in—Galliae : "in the presence of the Gauls" : cp. *in conspectu imperatoris* : B. II., 25.

interficere—vereretur : verbs of fearing take the infinitive in the sense "to be afraid," "not to have the courage" to do anything.—*interficere*, to kill in any manner, and from any motive : *neare*, implies cruelty or injustice.

fidem—interponere : "he pledged his own word to the rest," i.e., to those not in the power of Caesar.

iusiurandum and *iuramentum*, a civil oath : *sacramentum*, a military oath by which the soldier binds himself to serve the State.

CHAPTER VII.

quod—tribuerat : B. I., 33. Explain the indicative with *quod* : F. 198, 2 ; P. 99 (g), i.

posset : scil. *Caesar eum coercere et deterrere*.

longius : "too far" : F. 58, 5.

amentiam : "a person is said to be *amens* when he acts without reason like an idiot : he is said to be *demens* when he acts like a madman." —Döderlein.

prospiciendum : scil, *statuebat*.

ne—posset : scil. *amentia* : "to prevent his folly harming him or the state to any degree" : —*ne* : F. 185, 3 ; P. II., 29. —*quid* : acc. of extent or degree.

itaque commoratus : "therefore seeing he had to stay" : or some take it "during his stay."

Corus : the N. W. wind : also written *Caurus* : unfavourable to any one setting out from Boulogne.

partem : acc. of extent. F. 69, 9 ; P. 83 (c).

temporis=anni

dabat operam : "he was careful."

milites=pedites : as often in Caesar seeing that the *foot* formed the main strength of the Romans : see Introduction, *Army*.

conscendere in naves : we also find in Caesar *conscendere naves*.

impeditis animis : "when their attention was distracted" : cp. Cic. *Leg.*, I, 3, 8, *impedito animo*.

insciente Caesare : "without Caesar's knowledge : " abl. absolute.

domum : explain construction : F. 85, 1 ; P. II., 93, (a).

intermissa—postpositis : "giving up his departure and every thing else."

retrahi imperat : the more usual construction would be *ut retrahatur* : F. 181, 3 ; P. II., 27, 28.

si faciat : "if he should offer resistance."

pro sano : "like a sane man."

praesentis, scil. *Caesaris*.

neglexisset : what would this be in direct narrative?

manu : "in a hand to hand fight" : cp. Livy II., 46 ; *pugna iam ad manus venerat*.

civitatis : predicate genitive : F. 124 ; P. 81 (a).

CHAPTER VIII.

continente : words in—*ans*,—*ens*, when used as substantive or as actual participle, especially in the construction of the abl. abs. have *e*—in the abl. sing. We have with *continens*, however, *continenti* and *continente*.

pro tempore et pro re : "according as time and circumstances would permit."

pari numero quem=eodem numero quem : i.e. 2,000 : ch. 5.

solis occasu : another rendering is *ad solis occasum*. The date of the first expedition is fixed at the 18th or 20th of July.

Africo : called by the Greeks *Αίψ*, as blowing from Libya. The S.W. wind is still called by the Italians *Africo* or *Gherbino*.

intermisso : "having calmed down."

longius : Caesar probably passed the South Foreland and on the return of the tide he made his way to the shore.

remis contendit—caperet : "he strove to reach by rowing." As to the port from which Caesar sailed many conflicting opinions are held. Mr. Airy contends that Caesar started from the *estuary of the Somme*, and landed at the beach of *Pevensey*, on the coast of Sussex, near the spot where William the Conqueror disembarked eleven centuries afterwards. Mommsen favors the idea that the infantry embarked at *Ambleteuse* (which he identifies with *portus Itius*), and the cavalry at *Wissant*, east of Cape *Gris-Nez* (Hist. of Rome, IV., 7). Strabo also gives *portus Itius* as the place of embarkation on the first expedition. Others say that the infantry started from *Gesoriacum (Boulogne)*, and the cavalry at *Ambleteuse*.

admodum : properly, "according to measure" i.e. "in as great a measure as can be." In combination with numerals it denotes *approximation* and occurs frequently in Livy and Curtius. In Cicero we find it only

in the phrase *nihil admodum*, "in reality, nothing at all." Translate : "was highly praiseworthy."

non—labore ; "since they made no relaxation in their exertions in rowing."

accessum—navibus : "all the ships reached Britain ;" for the dative, See F. 164, 2, note ; P. 82 (d), ii.

cum : "though" ; F. 196, 7 ; P. 99 (i). iii.

annotinis : scil. *navibus* : some say "added to the ships used in the former year" ; others, "added to the provision ships."

quas—fecerat : "which each one had chartered for his own service." Some explain *sui commodi* as governed by *causā* understood. It is not usual to have the omission of *causa* except with the genitive of the gerund. It is then explained as an imitation of the Greek idiom when *ἔνεκα* or *ὕπέρ* is omitted : cp. IV., 17 : *si naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae*. The omission of *causa* with a substantive is perhaps nowhere else found in a prose writer.

amplius octingentis : the nominative *octingentae* would be more regular : P. III., 85 (f), and II., 123, c., 2.

ac—abdiderant : distinguish in meaning *in loca superiora* and *in locis superioribus*, *se abdere*.

CHAPTER IX.

exposito exercitu : the full expression is *exercitum ex navibus in terram exponere*.

castris governed by *idoneo* : what adjectives govern a dative ? F. 60, 2 ; P. 82 (e), v.

consedissent : subjunctive of dependent question : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99 (d).

cohortibus decem : not a legion, but two cohorts from each of the five legions.

qui—essent : "to guard the vessels" : for the two datives : F. 134, 1 ; P. 82 (c) and (b).

de tertia vigilia : "in the course of the third watch" : the expression implies that the third watch had been set. The Romans divided the night into four watches : *prima vigilia* from 6 to 9 p.m. : *secunda vigilia* from 9-12 p.m. : *tertia vigilia* from 12-3 a.m., and *quarta vigilia* from 3-6 a.m.

veritus navibus : "fearing for the ships." The dative is not common with *vereor*, though common enough with *metuo* and *timeo*.

molli atque aperto : "smooth and clear of rocks."

praesidio : dat. of purpose : F. 134, 1 ; P. 82 (c). *navibus* governed by *prae*—in *praefecit*. F. 120 ; P. 82 (e), ii.

equitatu—essedis : abl. of instrument,

conspicatus est: "caught a glimpse of": the word *conspicor* is common in Caesar and Plautus: not common in Terence: never found in Lucretius, Vergil, or Cicero.

ad flumen: the *Stour* near Wye, the north bank of which is much higher (*locus superior*) than the south and would thus form a natural defence.

se in silvas abdiderunt: distinguish in meaning *se in silvas abdiderunt*: "they hid themselves by fleeing into the woods!" and *se in silvis abdiderunt*: "they hid themselves when in the woods."

opere: explained afterwards by *crebris arboribus succisis*. Such breast-works were often made in the American Civil War by felling trees.

ipsi—propugnabant: "they in scattered bands throw their javelins out of the woods." Others translate: "they came out of the woods in small bodies to fight": but compare B. VII., 86: *ex turribus propugnantes*.

testudine facta: "forming a *testudo*." This movement was done by the soldiers of the inner files locking their shields above their heads, while the outer files protected the sides. The resemblance of the locked shields to a tortoise shell (*testudo*) gave it the name.

longius: "too far."

prosequi: "to follow up the pursuit," "to continue in the pursuit." In the next chapter *persequor* is "to make a pursuit," "to pursue."

munitioni castrorum: "for fortifying the camp": by digging a trench and throwing up a mound. As this was indispensable, *castra munire* has often the meaning of *castra locare*, *castra ponere*.

CHAPTER X.

postridie eius diei: literally "on the morrow of that day."—*postridie* = *posteri die* seems to be a *locative form* for *postero die*, an ablative in ordinary Latin. The genitive *eius diei* is pleonastic and may have arisen from the analogy of the Greek in which *ὑστερος* takes a genitive: cp. B. I., 47. — *pridie eius diei*: Tacit. Ann. xv. 54: Tacit. Hist. I., 26, *postero iduum* = *ὑστερα εἰδών*.

milites=pedites: as we find elsewhere in Latin.

in expeditionem: "as a flying column."

aliquantum itineris: partitive genitive: "some distance on their journey."

extremi: "the rear" of the detachment sent out by Caesar were still seen by those remaining in the camp.

qui nunciarent=ut ei nunciarent: F. 184, I; P. II., 25.

afflictas: "shattered."

in litore eictas esse: "were stranded on the shore." Some read *in litus*. The difference between the ablative and the accusative is that the latter would simply imply that they were driven on shore while the former would express that they were still remaining there.

subsisterent: "held," "kept them in position."

concursum: "collision."

incommodum: a mild way of stating the actual loss that occurred in consequence of the disaster.

CHAPTER XL

legiones: so *milites* = *pedites*.

desistere itinere: abl. of separation: F. 158, 2; P. 85 (h).

revertitur: see note V., 5.

coram perspicit: "he sees with his own eyes."

sic ut: *sic* is here superfluous. The regular construction would be to omit *sic ut* and use the accusative with the infinitive in the clause *reliquae viderentur*, since it really depends on *cognoverat*.

negotio: "trouble."

fabros: these were not necessarily a part of the legion, though they frequently accompanied it. They were a sort of Engineer Corps who looked after the mechanical work to be done, and were under the direction of the *praefectus fabrum*. Here, in the absence of the regular *fabri*, Caesar calls for volunteers out of the legion.

iubet—scribit: note the force of these presents.

nullae operae ac laboris: "though it was a wearisome and laborious undertaking: F. 124; P. 81 (a).

subduci: *subducere naves* opposed to *deducere naves*.

traesidio navibus: for the two datives: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c) and (b).

eodem: to the fortified place lately taken from the enemy.

summa imperii: "the whole of the command."

huic—intercesserant: "constant wars had sprung up between this one and the other states": for the dative *huic*: F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

permoti: in presence of the Romans the Britons forgot their broils and appointed Cassivellaunus a leader.

CHAPTER XII.

quos—dicunt: "of whom the inhabitants state there is a tradition that they were born in the island itself." The original inhabitants of Britain belonged to the great Keltic family that occupied in Caesar's time all the western part of Europe. The belief that they were *autochthones* seems to

have been common among the Romans : Tacit. Agr. II.: *ceterum Britanniam qui mortales initio coluerint, indigenae an advecti, ut inter barbaros, parum competum*. So also were the Carians according to Herodotus (B. I. 171) ; the Sicani (Thucy. VI. 2) ; the Athenians (Eurip. Ion, 29).

maritima pars scil. *incolitur ab iis*. So also Tacit. Agr. II.: *proximi Gallis et similes sunt*;

nominibus : that is, there were tribes in Britain and on the continent with the same name as the Atrebrates, Belgae and Parisii.

hominum : "of the population."

fere Gallicis consimilia : with *Gallicis* scil. *aedificiis* : "like in the main these in Gaul."

taleis examinatis : "iron bars of ascertained weight." A good deal of discussion has arisen on this passage, because the Greek paraphrast renders the word *taleis* by *δακτυλίοις*, "finger rings." By comparing the present passages with B. VII. 33, we find *taleae* used in the sense of "bar" or "beam."—*examinatis* : cp. *examen* (= *exagimen*), "the beam of a balance;" so *ala* = *axilla* ; *mala* = *maxilla*.

nummo : Herodotus calls the current coin *νόμισμα* (B. I. 94 ; III. 56). According to Aristotle (Ethics v. 8) the word is derived from *νόμος* because the value is fixed by *law* (*νόμος*). It is probable that the Romans introduced the word *nummus* from the Sicilian word *νοῦμος*, a name given to a small coin worth about five cents of our money. The earliest mint established at Rome was in 344 B.C.

plumbum album : "tin." Caesar here reverses facts. The *tin* mines of Britain are found near the coast chiefly in Cornwall, Devon and Wales ; while *iron* is abundant in Stafford, Shropshire, Derby, parts of York and Durham. The Scilly Islands were called *Cassiterides* or *Tin Islands* from the Greek *κασσίτερος*, "tin." It is strange that Mr. Crutwell, of Oxford (History of Roman Literature, p. 192), should make the mistake in supposing that *plumbum album* meant *lead*. "The existence of lead and iron were known to him (Caesar) ; he does not allude to tin, but its occurrence could hardly have been unknown to him."

ejus : refers to iron. According to official statistics, the gross annual produce of iron is 3,600,000 tons, while *tin* amounts to about 10,500 tons. The fact that Caesar gained his information from the people on the coast, where iron is scarce, may have led to this mistake.

aere importato : though we find *copper* in Cornwall, Devon, Stafford and Anglesey, the mines were not much worked till the last century.

materia : "timber."

fagum : *fagus* in Vergil and in Pliny is the *beech* while *φηγός* in Theophrastus is the *oak*. Both words are from *φαγεῖν*, "to eat," indicating the use of the nuts as food for primitive man. Crutwell (Hist. of Roman

Literature p. 192, note 3) says: "I am told by Professor Rolleston that Caesar is here mistaken. The pine, by which he presumably meant the Scotch fir, certainly existed in the first century B.C., and as to the beech, Burnham beeches were then fine young trees."

leporem—putant: it is not known how this belief originated. The hare was forbidden under the Mosaic law (Levit. xi., 6); possibly the absence of corn in Britain may have made the others unpalatable.

non fas=nefas: "impious."

loca frigoribus: on account of its insular position and the influence of the gulf stream. Tacitus says (Agr. 12) *caelum crebris imbribus ac nebulis foedum: asperitas frigorum abest*.

CHAPTER XIII.

natura: "by nature," i.e. "in shape." Caesar may have gained his knowledge of the shape of Britain from the natives or from the then current works of the Greek writers since the island was not circumnavigated by the Romans till A.D. 84 fully a century after his time: cp. Tacit. Agr. 10: *hanc oram novissimi maris tunc primum Romana classi circumventa insulam esse Britanniam affirmant*. Strabo (IV. 5, 1) mentions also the fact that Britain is triangular and says that its longest side is parallel to Keltica and is 4,300 *stadia* in length (about 500 miles). Keltica was a name applied to the country from the mouth of the Rhine to the Pyrenees. Pomponius Mela (III., 6) compares Britain in shape to Sicily and says that one side faces Gaul, and another side, Germany.

Cantium: now Kent, which is said to mean "corner."

quo—appelluntur: "for which almost all the ships from Gaul make;" with *appellere navem*, cp. the Gk. *κέλευν νῆα*.

inferior corresponds to *alter* in *alter angulus*.

hoc—alterum, scil. *latus*.

quingenta: the measurement from North Foreland to Land's End is 344 British or 356 Roman miles. Strabo's statement was evidently taken from this statement of Caesar.

alterum vergit scil. *latus*: cp. Tacit. Agr. 10: *Britannia in orientem Germaniae, in occidentem Hispaniae obtenditur*: "Britain lies opposite to Germany on the East, to Spain on the West." The erroneous views held by the Romans with regard to the position of Britain arose from their innate dread of long ocean voyages.

qua ex parte: Tacitus (Agr. 34) says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. The word *Hibernia* is said to be derived from the Celtic *Eriu* or *Iveriu*, meaning "Western." (Max Müller Science of Language, Vol. I. p. 284.)

dimidio minor: "half the size," literally, "less by a half. The area of Great Britain is said to be 77,370 square miles; that of Ireland about 30,370 sq. miles.

pari spatio atque=eodem spatio atque: "the same distance as:" abl. characteristic: F. 131, 9; P. 85 (c): so *pari numero*: B. v. Chap. VIII. The distance from Carnsore Point in Southern Ireland and St. David's Head in Wales is 52 miles: between Fairhead in Northern Ireland and Mull of Cantire in Scotland the distance is 13 miles: the distance from Calais to Dover is 21 miles.

Mona: some have supposed the *Isle of Man* to be here referred to, since the position of that Island is midway between Britain and Ireland. As, however, there is no doubt about *Mona* in Tacitus (Agr. 14; Ann. XIV. 29) referring to Anglesey, Caesar may have been misinformed of its position. Besides the Isle of Man was properly called in Latin *Monopia*. According to Taylor (Words and Places), the word *Mona* is from the Celtic *monn* "a district." So we have *Maine*, *Mayenne* in France, *Mantua* in Italy, *La Mancha* in Spain, *Mansfield*, *Manchester*, the *Menai* Straits in England. Others say from Welsh *mon* "alone," or *menedh* "an island."

complures—insulae: Caesar, no doubt, refers to the Hebrides, Orkney or Shetland Islands, but wrongly places them in the channel between Britain and Ireland.

nonnulli: probably Greek geographers whose works have perished.

bruma=brevima=brevissima: scil. *dies*: the winter solstice. This, of course, is untrue.

certis—mensuris: "by accurate measures made by the water clock." The *clepsydra* (κλεψύδρα) is meant. The water clock was said to have been invented about 460 B.C. Its use was common among the Greeks. It consisted ordinarily of two globes of glass cemented together, the lower one receiving the water and having the divisions of the hours marked on it.

ut—fert opinio: "according to their belief": cp. Cic. pro Fonteio 13, *ut opinio mea fert*: "as I believe."

septingentorum milium: the west coast of Britain is 590 British or 610 Roman miles. For descriptive genitive: F. 130, 7, 8; P. 81 (e).

tertium, scil., *latus*.

hoc: the west coast of Britain is 550 British or 570 Roman miles. This is short of the actual.

CHAPTER XIV.

humanissimi: cp. Shakespeare Henry VI., I, 4, 7.

Kent, in the commentaries of Caesar writ,
Is termed the civil'st place in all the isle.

interiores plerique: "the majority of the people of the inland district": *plerique* means "most people" or "the majority": *plurimi*, both "most people" or "a great many."

vitro: "woad," still cultivated in France and till *indigo* took its place much used in producing blue dyes.

hoc : ablative of means.

horridiore aspectu : ablative of description : F. 131, 9 ; P. 85 (c).
So also *capillo promisso*.

deni duodenique : "companies of ten and in other cases twelve." We would say "ten or twelve." This statement is generally regarded as untrue.

CHAPTER XV.

ita tamen ut=ita tamen conflixerunt ut.

omnibus partibus=in omnibus partibus : "in every quarter."

cupidius : "too eagerly."

intermisso spatio : "after an interval of time had elapsed."

se-eiecerunt : "they sallied forth." The impetuous character of the Kelts was as strongly marked in Caesar's days as in later times.

in statione : "on sentry."

iis primis : the first cohorts of the legion regularly contained the finest troops.

inter se : "apart."

per medios—perruperunt scil. *hostes* : "the enemy made a dash between them." These cohorts had probably not been on the first expedition.

CHAPTER XVI.

cum—dimicaretur : "when the battle was going on in sight of all and in front of the camp." For *quum* : F. 203 ; P. 99, (f), v.—*sub oculis=in conspectu*.

intellectum est : "it was evident to us." Supply *nobis* dat. or *a nobis* : F. 164, 2, note : P. 82 (d), ii.

nostros=milites legionarios. —*sub oculis=in conspectu*.

ab signis discedere : "to desert the standards" would be a violation of the *sacramentum* or military oath.

minus aptos : "less effective" (than others would be).

equites—dimicare scil. *intellectum est*.

consulto—cederent : "often purposely yielded."

quum—removissent : "when once they had drawn away."

dispari praelio : the heavy body armour of the Romans would hamper their movements, while the Briton armed (Tacit. Agr. 36) with a long sword and small buckler, would skilfully elude the blows of his antagonist and by his superior length of weapon would be more effective.

et cedentibus et sequentibus scil. *Britannis*: "to the Britons while retreating and pursuing." The meaning is that when the Britons and Romans used cavalry the danger was equalized, but when the Britons used chariots they were at an advantage.

accedebat huc ut: "to this was added the fact that."

stationes dispositas: "outposts stationed here and there."

deinceps: "in succession": so also *manceps*, *tericeps*, *anceps*, old nominatives used adverbially.

CHAPTER XVII.

rari: "infrequently."

lenius = *minus acriter*: "with less spirit."

proelio lacessere: "to draw out to battle:" distinguish this from *proelium lacessere*: "to skirmish."

tres legiones: this is an unusually large number to send on a foraging expedition. Perhaps the lesson they had learned on a previous occasion (B. IV. 32) had made them more guarded.

Caius Trebonius: Caius Trebonius was one of Caesar's *legati*, and distinguished himself by his personal bravery when the winter quarters of Cicero were attacked by the German horse: B. VI. 40.

advolaverunt, scil., *hostes*.

sic uti—*absisterent*: i.e., *sic advolaverunt* = *tam celeriter advolaverunt*: "with such impetuosity they rushed forward that they came close up to the standards of the legions." The meaning is that the enemy dashed against those that had ventured outside the ranks to forage but did not dare to commence a regular engagement with the three legions.—*signis legionibusque* = *signis legionum* by *hendiadys*.

neque = *et non*.

subsidio scil. *legionum*: "to the support of the legions:" for the case see F. 105, 9, note: P. 85 (k), iii. Translate, "as long as the cavalry trusting to the support (of the legions), now that they saw the legions in their rear, drove the enemy before them."

neque—*dederunt* scil., *nostri milites*: "our soldiers gave them no opportunity either to unite their forces, or to form in line, or to leap down from their war chariots."—*sui colligendi*: F. 171; P. II., 141. *Aut* after *neque* is more emphatic than a second *neque* would be.—*unquam* and *usquam* are properly used in sentences that are negative or virtually negative.

summis copiis: "with all their forces united." Some translate it by "with a numerous force." The Greek paraphrast renders it by πολλῇ δυνάμει.

CHAPTER XVIII.

fines Cassivellauni: across the Thames in what is now Middlesex and Buckinghamshire.

uno omnino loco = *in uno omnino loco*. It is difficult to say which spot is meant here. *Sunbury, Conway, Westminster, Wallingford* and *Kingston* are given by different authorities.

hoc i.e. in hoc loco.

alteram = *adversam*: "on the opposite."

præfixis: "driven into the sloping bank," while *defixas* refers to those driven into the bed of the stream.

perfugis: a person is said to be *perfuga* with regard to those to whom he flees: *transfuga*, with regard to those whom he abandons.

præmisso: sent up and down the south bank of the Thames to guard the advance of the legion, and to dislodge those who may be waiting to oppose them.

ea celeritate—ierunt: "but our soldiers pushed forward at so rapid a pace, and with so violent an onset, though their heads alone were out of the water, that, etc.": *capite solo*: abl. of measure: F. 58, 6; P. 85 (g).

CHAPTER XIX.

ut supra: B. v., 17.

contentionis: "of continuing (the war)."

amplioribus: "the most of."

millibus—quattuor essedariorum: if each chariot contained six men besides the driver, as it seems they did, there would be about six hundred chariots.

servabat = *observabat*: "kept watching."

locis = *in locis*.

iis regionibus: ablative of separation: "from that district."

viis semitisque: *via* is the regular road: *semita* is a by-path.

et confugebat: "and attended with these he was wont to engage with great danger to our men."

hoc metu: "from fear of this," as *hoc dolore* (B. v., chap. 4).

relinquebatur ut: "the only alternative left to Caesar was" or "all that remained for Caesar was."

CHAPTER XX.

labors atque itinere: "by toilsome marching": *hendiadys*.

Trinobantes occupied Essex and Suffolk. The best way of translating this involved sentence is to break it up into at least four sentences.

"Meanwhile the Trinobantes, about the most powerful state of that district, send ambassadors to Caesar and promise to surrender themselves to him, and to obey his orders. From that (state) the youthful Mandubratius, who had attached himself to Caesar, had come to him in continental Gaul. Imanuentius, the father of this (Mandubratius), had held sovereign power in that state and had been slain by Cassivellaunus, (while) he himself (Mandubratius) had escaped death by flight. They (the Trinobantes) ask (Caesar) to defend Mandubratius from all wrong-doing on the part of Cassivellaunus and to send to the state (a man) to rule it and to exercise sovereign power." See remarks on the differences between Latin and English idiom. F. p. 230; P. page 210. —*ex qua* scil. *civitate*. —*pollicentur sese-facturos*: F. 110, 1; P. II., 13. —*qui praesit=talem ut praesit*: F. 184, 1; P. II., 34, 55.

his—imperat: what two meanings and what two constructions has *impero*?

ad numerum: "to the full amount."

CHAPTER XXI.

Trinobantibus defensis, the kindness shown by Caesar to the Trinobantes gained over the other tribes to the side of Rome. The *Cenimagni* inhabited *Bedford* and *Cambridge*; the *Segontiaci*, probably *Berkshire*; the *Ancalites*, *Oxford* and *Buckingham*; *Bibroci*, *Berkshire*; the *Cassi*, *Hertfordshire*. This defection was ruinous to the British cause; even the *Cassi*, the state over which Cassivellaunus ruled, joined in it.

oppidum: generally supposed to be *Verulamium* or *St. Albans*.

satis magnus: "quite a large."

autem: "now."

natura atque opere: "by its natural position and especially by fortification."

oppugnare, "to storm": *expugnare*, "to take by storm."

paulisper: used of past and future time: *parumper*, generally of future time.

multi scil. *Britanni*: "many of the Britons."

CHAPTER XXII.

in—locis: about *St. Alban's*.

ad mare: "on the sea coast."

quibus regionibus: "over which district": for dative F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

castra navalia: B. v., chap. 2.

constituisset—superesset—intelligeret: explain these subjunctives.

id posse : "and that this time might easily be wasted," if further delay was made. The experience of the first expedition had taught Caesar the danger of waiting too long in Britain.

quid penderet : tributum was a tax paid by each individual through the tribe in proportion to a man's property : *vectigal* taxes levied in any other way. Caesar left no garrison in Britain and the tax was, consequently, never paid. The conquest of Britain was really begun under the Emperor Claudius, A.D. 43, but not completed till the reign of Domitian about 81 A.D.

CHAPTER XXIII.

refectas scil. esse : "had been repaired."

his deductis, scil., *navibus*,

duabus—commeatibus : "in two trips : " ablative of manner.

sic accidit uti : "it so happened that." F. 182, 4 ; P. 99 (b), ii.

desideraretur : "was lost."

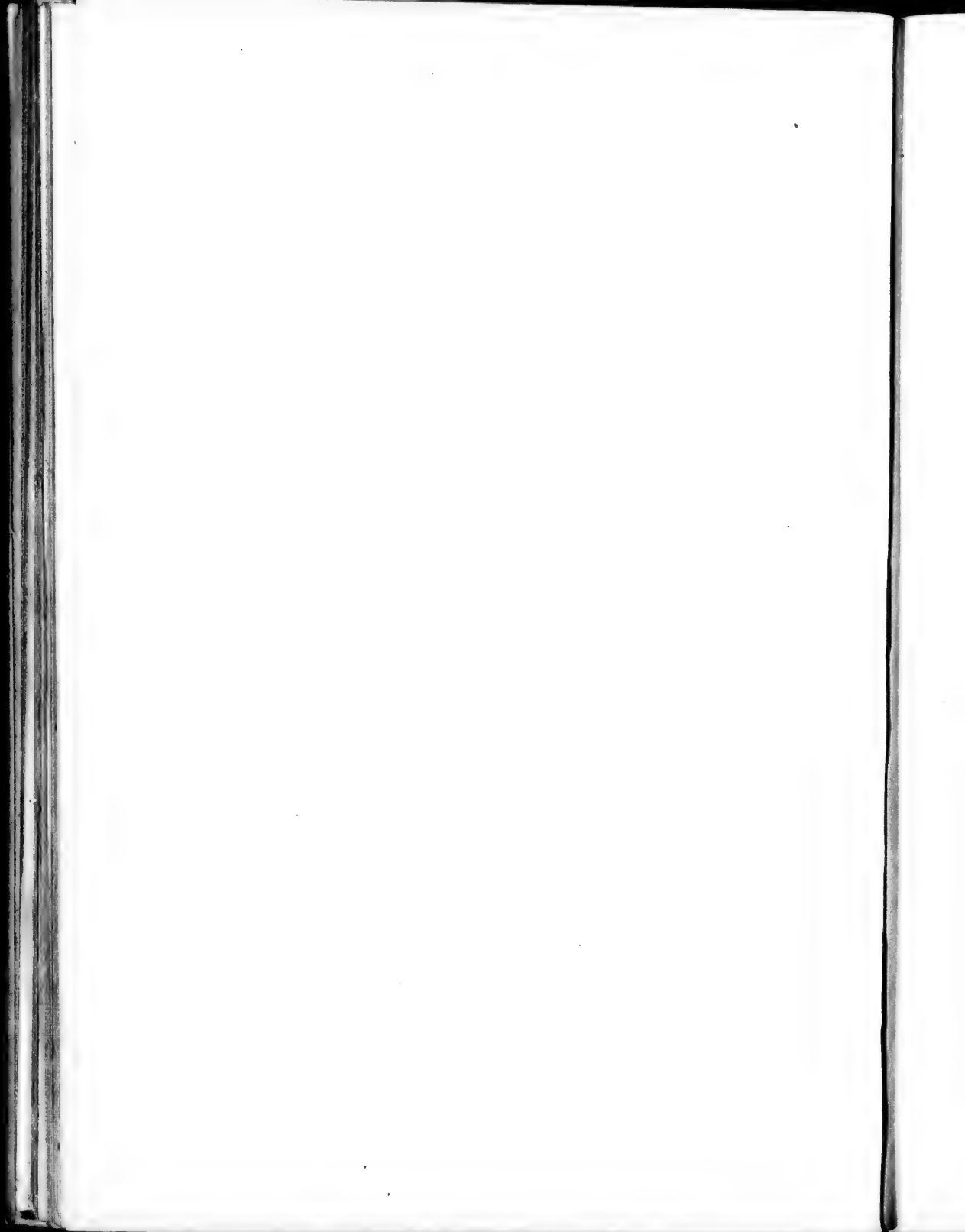
inanes : these were of two kinds, both those used in the first trip returning for another load and those made on the continent and sent across by Labienus.

ne—excluderetur : "that he might not be prevented from sailing by the time of the year."

aequinoctium suberat : Caesar sailed from Britain shortly after the middle of September, so that he had been in the island two months or over.

necessario—collocovit : "he necessarily stowed away his soldiers in narrower compass than usual."

solvisset scil. naves.



SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. IV.

To be Translated into Latin.

XX.

1. A short period of time was left to carry on a regular war. 2. In almost all the Gallic wars, the Britons furnished auxiliaries to our enemies. 3. It will be of great assistance to us if only we are able to ascertain what nation inhabits Britain. 4. If we cannot find out how great the island is, still, it will be of great advantage to examine the character of the people. 5. We know very little of the island, for very few persons except merchants go to it. 6. He thought if he should summon to himself the traders from all quarters, he might find out what harbours were suitable for war ships. 7. The sea coast and the districts opposite Gaul were known to the merchants. 8. The time of the year was so short that it was impossible to carry on a regular campaign. 9. When he called the merchants to him, they could not tell the size of the island.

XXI.

1. Caius Volusenus, a tribune in his army, was sent forward with a war ship. 2. Before ordering the fleet to assemble, he directed Volusenus to explore the sea coast. 3. Before sending the ambassadors home again, he made them liberal promises. 4. All his plans were reported by merchants to the Britons. 5. Several states of Britain sent envoys to promise him that they would do all his orders. 6. Commius, whose influence among the Atrebates he regarded of great value, was ordered to go to them. 7. Visit what states you can and tell them that I shall shortly come. 8. I will examine all the places as far as opportunity offers, seeing that I dare not go ashore. 9. He returned and reported to Caesar all that he had seen.

XXII.

1. While ships were being got ready in that district for the purpose of carrying on a war against Britain, ambassadors came to Caesar. 2. The Morini who had made war on the Roman people excused themselves on the ground that they were barbarians. 3. We are unacquainted with your

custom, but we promise to do all that you order. 4. Caesar levied a large number of hostages from the Morini, because he thought that an enemy who had given hostages would obey his commands. 5. About forty transports will be enough to convey our legions across the sea. 7. To these are to be added the eighteen transports which are detained by the wind from coming into the harbour. 7. What galleys we had besides, we shall leave on the coast of Gaul. 8. Many ships were prevented by the storm from reaching the island. 9. We ordered the lieutenant to send troops against the enemy.

XXIII.

1. These things were arranged by Caesar on that day. 2. At the third watch of the following night he went on board his vessel. 3. He waited at anchor till the weather should be suitable for sailing. 4. It is by no means a suitable place for disembarking, when weapons can be thrown from the cliffs to the shore. 5. Both military science and especially seamanship demand that all commands be executed promptly. 6. After weighing anchor they advanced at a given signal about five miles from that place. 7. They obtained fair weather and moored the ships on an open beach. 8. He collected his officers and told them what he had learned from Volusenus. 9. In that spot they saw on all the hills the forces of the enemy.

XXIV.

1. The barbarians generally employed cavalry and charioteers in battle. 2. They followed our men with all their forces, after they learned of the arrival of the Romans. 3. It was not possible to moor ships of such size in that place. 4. The Romans could not moor their ships except in deep water. 5. The soldiers could not jump out of the ships, keep their footing amid the waves, and fight with the enemy all at once. 6. The enemy, on the other hand, with all their limbs free, could hurl weapons from dry ground. 7. Wholly unacquainted with this sort of fighting, our men were greatly terrified by the enemy. 8. The enemy boldly hurled their darts against our men, and spurred on their horses. 9. All those places were unknown to our troops who were oppressed with their heavy armour.

XXV.

1. The galleys were removed a little from the transports and put in motion with oars. 2. The enemy were dislodged by arrows and heavy missiles hurled from the ships of war. 3. If you do not wish to be frightened by the heavy missiles, fall back just a little. 4. The figure of

our ships, the motion of the oars and the unusual kind of engines terrified the barbarians. 5. He at least who carried the eagle of the tenth legion did his duty to the state and to the commander. 6. If you do not jump down out of your ship, you will betray the eagle to the enemy. 7. Let no such disgrace be done; let us all leap down from the ships. 8. They leaped down from the ships and began to approach the enemy. 9. We pray the gods that this battle may turn out successfully for our legion.

XXVI.

1. The enemy fought fiercely for many hours. 2. We could not follow our own standards, but we flocked to any we met. 3. The enemy would surround some as they came out of the ships in scattered groups. 4. The enemy knew all the shoals where our men landed. 5. Darts were thrown from the shore by the enemy. 6. When Caesar observed this he sent up some skiffs and spy boats filled with soldiers as a relief to those in distress. 7. Our men put the enemy to flight, but did not follow them up because they had no cavalry. 8. A fierce attack was made on the enemy by our men. 9. When Caesar saw his soldiers in danger he sent his reserves to aid them. 10. When all the spy boats were filled with soldiers, the Romans soon reached the island.

XXVII.

1. As soon as the Romans defeated the enemy in battle, the Britons gave hostages to Caesar. 2. When the Britons recovered from the flight they promised to do all that Caesar ordered. 3. Caesar sent forward Commius to Britain, but the Britons seized him after he disembarked. 4. They put him in chains although he had come to them in the character of an envoy. 5. After the battle was fought and peace made, he was sent back to Caesar. 6. The inhabitants asked the Romans to pardon their thoughtlessness. 7. Though you have made war on the Romans, I am willing to pardon your thoughtlessness, if you give hostages. 8. Caesar levied hostages from all the states of the island. 9. Within a few days we shall give some hostages to you; others will be summoned from the more distant parts. 10. If you lay all the blame upon the multitude you cannot be pardoned by me.

XXVIII.

1. The eighteen ships did not reach the land till four days afterwards. 2. They were seen from the camp of the Romans, but some were carried down to the lower part of the island and others were driven back to the

continent. 3. No ship was able to keep on its course owing to the great storm that arose. 4. Some of the vessels were driven back to the same place from which they had started and some cast ashore. 5. On the lower part of the island very many of the vessels were wrecked with great loss to themselves. 6. They started for the continent with night before them, even though the storm was great. 7. When the ships started for the continent, many of them were filling with waves. 8. They set sail at daybreak and landed at sunset. 9. A great storm arose at sea when the ships were sailing to Britain.

XXIX.

1. It happened that Caesar did not know that the full moon caused very high tides in the ocean. 2. He had the galleys drawn up on shore and the transports anchored. 3. The Romans had no opportunity to lend aid to the ships. 4. On that night many ships were wrecked by the storm. 5. The rest of the ships lost their cables, anchors, and the rest of their rigging. 6. Throughout the whole army such a commotion took place that Caesar did not know what to do. 7. The Romans had no corn in the camp, for Caesar had not provided a supply since he intended to winter in Gaul. 8. All things necessary for building ships would have to be brought from the continent. 9. His ships were nearly all unseaworthy, and could not be repaired at this time.

XXX.

1. After this battle, the chiefs of Britain held conferences among themselves. 2. They learned that the Romans had few soldiers owing to the small size of our camp. 3. The camp of the Romans was very small because Caesar had no baggage in the army. 4. They thought that their best policy was to renew the war. 5. Since the Romans lack horsemen, ships and grain, the best thing to do is to keep them from supplies and prevent their return. 6. If our men were prevented from a return, the war would be prolonged to the winter. 7. They began again to form a conspiracy after they learned that our men had no cavalry. 8. No one will cross over to Britain for the purpose of carrying on war. 9. All the Britons left the camp, and a league began to be formed.

XXXI.

1. When the Britons learned what had happened to Caesar's ships they did not send hostages to him. 2. He suspected that they would not send hostages. 3. From the fact that many of the ships were severely disabled,

he suspected that he should have to use the timber of these vessels for repairing the others. 4. Corn was collected by Caesar from that district because the Romans had not brought a supply of it from Gaul. 5. All things which were of need for repairing the vessels which had been wrecked were brought from the continent. 6. These matters were carried out by the soldiers with the greatest zeal. 7. He lost twelve ships at that time ; still he was able to sail to the continent with the rest. 8. Many of the ships were very severely damaged at that time by the storm which suddenly arose. 9. Building material was collected by Caesar for repairing ships.

XXXII.

1. The seventh legion had been sent to forage when Caesar saw a larger cloud of dust than usual in the direction in which the legion marched. 2. In front of the gates of the camp the soldiers on guard saw a great cloud of dust. 3. The cohorts which were on guard at once set out in that direction in which the enemy was marching. 4. Our men were hard pressed by the enemy and with difficulty kept their ground. 5. "Do you see," says he, "a larger cloud of dust than usual in that direction in which the enemy's forces are?" 6. When the forces which were on guard before the gates of the camp had set out, in that direction the other cohorts immediately followed them. 7. While our men were engaged in reaping, the enemy who were skulking in the woods suddenly attacked them. 8. Our ranks were thrown into great confusion because the enemy suddenly attacked our men. 9. The enemy suddenly surrounded our men with many forces. 10. The enemy suspected that our forces would come to that spot to reap the corn.

XXXIII.

1. At first they ride around everywhere and then work their way in among the horsemen when they leap down from their chariots and the drivers withdraw from the battle. 2. Darts are hurled from all sides by the enemy against our troops, and when once they have thrown our men into disorder they fight on foot. 3. The Britons exhibited in battle the activity of cavalry and the steadiness of foot soldiers. 4. They even on a downward slope rein in their horses when at full gallop. 5. In a moment they are able to check their horses even when running at full gallop. 6. They are accustomed to run along the whole length of the pole, and to stand on the yoke. 7. Often have our men seen them on a steep slope rein their steeds. 8. When they were hard pressed by the Romans they had a safe retreat to their chariots. 9. The sheer terror caused by the horses and the rumbling of the wheels generally threw the ranks of our men into confusion.

XXXIV.

1. When our men had recovered from their fear, they thought it was time to provoke a battle. 2. For several successive days the enemy were prevented by a storm from offering battle. 3. There is a great opportunity to free our country for ever, if we drive the enemy out of the island. 4. We thought this a most important time for engaging in battle. 5. Our men were not able to leave the camp on account of the severe storms which followed for several days. 6. He collected all his infantry and cavalry together into one place. 7. What a fine opportunity you will have of driving the Romans from their camp, if only you collected all your forces against them. 8. Our men were greatly disconcerted by the Britons, but at the arrival of Caesar they recovered from fear. 9. They told their countrymen that it would be an easy matter to drive out the Romans, if they would attack them with all their forces.

XXXV.

1. If the enemy are repulsed in battle, they easily escape danger in consequence of their speed. 2. Caesar said that the enemy would escape by flight, as they had done on the days previous. 3. Caesar obtained about thirty horses from Commius Atrebas, and pursued the enemy. 4. The legions were drawn up in battle array in front of the camp. 5. The onset of our men could not be withstood by the enemy who turned their backs in flight. 6. Several of the enemy were slain when they were overtaken by our men. 7. Our men followed the enemy on that day as far as they could. 8. Before the Romans withdrew to their camp they burnt all the houses of the enemy. 9. The thirty horsemen (of whom mention has been made before), pursued the enemy and killed several of them.

XXXVI.

1. The enemy sent ambassadors on the same day to the Roman camp to treat for peace. 2. "I demand," says Caesar, "double the number of hostages I formerly demanded, and I order you to bring them to the continent." 3. "I must not," says he, "expose my ships to an equinoctial storm." 4. Though they set sail at midnight, they nevertheless reached the port in safety. 5. He was not able to reach port with two merchantmen. 6. These two merchantmen were carried down to a lower part of the island. 7. At midnight he set sail for Britain with all the ships. 8. Although they set sail at midnight they nevertheless reached the port in safety. 9. Caesar will obtain favourable weather at daybreak.

XXXVII.

1. Caesar disembarked about three hundred soldiers on that day. 2. He set out to Britain after he subdued the Morini. 3. This people was induced by the hope of booty to attack our camp. 4. If you do not wish to be killed, lay down your arms. 5. When they had formed themselves into a circle, hastily they rushed with a shout against the foe. 6. All the cavalry was sent by Caesar to aid the Roman foot. 7. The battle lasted for more than four hours and several of our troops fell in battle. 8. Our men slew a great number of the enemy in battle, who threw away their arms. 9. Many of our friends received wounds in that battle.

XXXVIII.

1. These legions were led back from Britain against the Morini. 2. About six thousand men assembled for the defence of the three hundred whom the Morini had surrendered. 3. After our cavalry came in sight the enemy threw down their arms and fled. 4. We have no place to retreat to. 5. The year before, the Morini had used the swamps as a place for refuge. 6. They hid themselves in the swamps; but all the rest fell into the hands of the lieutenant. 7. They cut down all the corn which was in the fields. 8. Caesar decreed a thanksgiving of twenty days. 9. Caesar said that all the enemy withdrew to the thick woods, where they pitched their camp. 10. The houses of the enemy were all burned down by the soldiers of the Roman army after the battle was fought.

OUNT ALLISON
SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. V.

To be Translated into Latin.

I.

1. According to his annual custom, Caesar built new ships during the winter and repaired the old ones. 2. He ordered the lieutenants to see that these things were done. 3. He made his ships a little lower in the water than ours, because the tides in that locality were lower. 4. He also made the ships broader because he had to transport a large number of beasts of burden. 5. All the tackling of the vessels he brought from Spain. 6. When he heard that the neighbouring part of the province was being devastated by the Pirustae, he set out against them. 7. The enemy at once sent messengers to offer compensation for the wrongs done by them, and to appoint arbitrators.

II.

1. During that winter, he held assizes in Hither Gaul. 2. After he had rigged out all the ships, he launched them within a few days. 3. When he came to Port Itius, he praised the soldiers and all who had charge of the construction of the ships. 4. The distance from Port Itius to the continent is about thirty miles. 5. The Treveri did not obey the orders of Caesar, because they did not come to the meeting, as he had ordered them. 6. He, therefore, set out against their territories with four legions and a large number of cavalry.

III.

1. This state which borders on the Rhine has great forces of cavalry and infantry. 2. At that time there were two claimants for the chieftainship. 3. One of these declared his allegiance to Caesar, while (*at*) the other levied troops against the Roman people. 4. Many of the enemy who were terrified at the approach of our army fled into the forests. 5. They could not consult for the safety of the state and therefore sent privately ambassadors to Caesar to take measures for their own safety. 6. I am unwilling to desert my friends since I am the more easily able to keep the state in allegiance by remaining among them. 7. I shall come to Caesar's camp, and, if he is willing, I shall entrust it to his care.

IV.

1. Caesar did not wish to spend the rest of the summer in that district, because all things were ready for the campaign against Britain. 2. He orders this chief to come to him because he knew the motive of speech. 3. After the arrival of that chief, he ordered him to appear before him. 4. He said that he considered it a very important [translate into oblique narrative] matter to have the influence of that chief whose good will was so marked towards him. 5. In consequence of this remark of Caesar, the other chief was fired with much more resentment towards Caesar.

V.

1. The ships which had been built among the Meldae were unable to keep their course and returned to their starting point. 2. When Caesar came to the sea, he learned that the ships which had been built among the Meldae could not keep their course. 3. The rest of the ships were equipped with all necessary rigging. 4. From the whole of Gaul four thousand cavalry gathered to that place. 5. Caesar feared an uprising in Gaul during that summer. 6. He decided to take with him all the Gallic chiefs into Britain.

VI.

1. Dumnorix was very desirous of a revolution. 2. We all know that this man is of great influence among the Gauls. 3. He stated in the council of the chiefs that he had sent messengers to Caesar. 4. Dumnorix said that he was unaccustomed to sailing and that he would remain in Gaul. 5. This was the plan of Caesar: to kill all the Gauls when they were brought over to Britain (use a participle).

VII.

1. We must check Dumnorix and see that he does no harm to the state. 2. In that district for the greater part of the year, the north wind blows. 3. We must take care to learn the plans of this Gaul. 4. Caesar sent a large force of cavalry to follow him and to bring him back. 5. A man who will not act as a sane man when you are present will disregard your orders when you are absent. 6. He at once returned to Caesar after killing a large number of Gauls.

VIII.

1. Labienus was left on the continent with two legions to protect Port Itius. 2. He had to form his plans according to the time and circum-

stances. 3. At sunset he sailed for Britain, but was carried down by the tide. 4. At daybreak he saw the island away on the left. 5. All the Romans reached Britain at noon, but they could not land at that place where they had landed in the preceding summer. 6. The inhabitants of that district left the shore and took refuge in the heights.

IX.

1. Caesar at once landed his army on a smooth and open shore. 2. He left ten cohorts and three hundred cavalry to guard the ships. 3. The enemy advanced in their war chariots to the river. 4. They hid themselves in the forest in a place excellently fortified both by natural position and by defences. 5. All approaches were blocked up by the natives. 6. When our men had driven them from their position, Caesar wished to devote the the rest of the day to the fortification of the camp.

X.

1. He pursued the enemy with all his cavalry and infantry to cut down those who escaped. 2. The rear guard reached the coast and announced that all the ships had been thrown up on shore. 3. The ships were unable to endure the force of the storm and were dashed on the shore. 4. On the next night a great storm arose in the channel. 5. A very great loss was sustained by all the ships.

XI.

1. From the messengers and letters he ascertained that about forty ships had been damaged. 2. Shipwrights were picked out of the legions and were ordered to go to Britain. 3. He drew up on shore all the ships he had and united all with one general fortification. 4. He sent forward all his forces to guard the camp. 5. The territories of that chief are divided from the states on the coast by the river Thames. 6. On the approach of Caesar they appointed him to the supreme command.

XII.

1. They believe that they were born in that island. 2. After carrying on war in that place, they remained there. 3. They used iron for money and had dwellings very like those in Gaul. 4. There is no beech or fir on the island, although there is great abundance of all other kinds of timber. 5. Poultry they raise, not to eat but for amusement.

XIII.

1. Almost all ships from Gaul land at this place. 2. On the west of this island is Ireland, about half the size of Britain. 3. Many small islands lie between Britain and Ireland. 4. At the shortest day the night lasts for thirty days. 5. The whole island in circumference is about two thousand miles.

XIV.

1. The people who inhabit Kent do not differ much in custom from those on the continent. 2. They live chiefly on milk and flesh and clothe themselves in skins. 3. They often stain their bodies with wood, which makes them have a dreadful sight in battle. 4. The men have long hair and shave themselves.

XV.

1. Our men were superior to the enemy in all the battles they fought. 2. They drove the enemy to the hills and the woods. 3. While our men were off their guard, the enemy made an attack on them. 4. The enemy broke through our ranks and withdrew in safety to the hills. 5. The sentries in front of the camp made a stubborn resistance to the enemy. 6. Two cohorts were sent to the assistance of that legion.

XVI.

1. Our men on account of the weight of their armour could not overtake them. 2. Often the enemy purposely retreated and when they had gone a short distance from the camp, they turned round and attacked us. 3. They often leaped down from their horses and fought on foot. 4. They had their soldiers arranged at great intervals. 5. In addition to this, the one helped the other.

XVII.

1. At noon Caesar sent three legions to attack the enemy. 2. On the following day the enemy showed themselves on the hills. 3. On every hand they attacked our men. 4. They did not make any further stand against our troops. 5. The enemy in great numbers were cut down at that time.

XVIII.

1. He learned the plans of the enemy from a deserter. 2. The army of the Romans was led to the river Thames, which it crossed by a ford.

3. On the opposite bank of the river large forces of the enemy were drawn up. 4. Sharp stakes of the same kind were covered by the water of the river. 5. The enemy could not withstand the impetuosity of our troops.

XIX.

1. After he had disbanded the greater part of his forces, he gave up all hope of winning a battle. 2. About four thousand charioteers were left behind in that district where he knew we would march. 3. He rushed out of the woods to attack our men. 4. The result was that the soldiers inflicted great harm on the enemy. 5. They were unable to check the onset of our army.

XX.

1. He promised to send envoys to him. 2. Send me a man to take charge of the army. 3. He levied hostages from that state. 4. All the corn that the army needed was sent to Cassivellaunus. 5. For many years his father had held supreme power in that state.

XXI.

1. After giving up hostages, he learned from them all these facts. 2. The town of Cassivellaunus was fortified by the enemy. 3. Ten miles from this place is a town to which all assembled. 4. We were accustomed to set out at daybreak. 5. He delayed ten days in that place to find out the plans of the enemy.

XXII.

1. Over that state are four chiefs. 2. After arriving there, they storm the camp suddenly. 3. They slew the chief who had decided to revolt to the Romans. 4. He sustained a great defeat in that battle. 5. This war cannot be spun out by the Roman people. 6. They agreed as to the amount of the tribute Britain should pay each year.

XXIII.

1. He found that the army had returned to the sea. 2. All the ships were repaired in a short time. 3. He carried back the army in two relays. 4. In the previous year not a single ship was lost. 5. Very few reached the harbour on that day.

GRADED PASSAGES FOR SIGHT READING.

I.—CUM esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia, crebri ad eum rumores adferebantur omnes Belgas contra Populum Romanum coniurare obsidesque inter se dare : coniurandi has esse causas : primum, quod vererentur ne ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur ; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur.

Citerior, *nearer* ; creber, *frequent* ; coniuro, *conspire* ; vereor, *I fear* ; deinde, *in the next place* ; nonnulli, *some* ; sollicito, *stir up*.

II.—His nuntiis literisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et in interiorem Galliam Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet ad exercitum venit : constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Re frumentariā comparatā, castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

Nuntius, *message* ; commoveo, *I alarm* ; conscribo, *enlist* ; pabulum, *fodder* ; incipio, *begin* ; constanter, *uniformly*.

III.—Eo cum venisset, Remi ad eum legatos miserunt qui dicerent, se in potestatem Populi Romani permittere : neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra Populum Romanum omnino coniurasse, paratosque esse et (*both*) obsides dare et imperata facere : reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque sese cum his coniunxisse.

Qui dicerent,—qui = ut ei ; consentio, *agree* ; omnino, *at all*.

IV.—Cum ab his quaereret quae civitates in armis essent, sic reperiebat : Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque transductos ibi consedisse, Gallosque expulisse. De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos valere. Suessiones suos esse finitimos ; fines latissimos feracissi-

mosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum (*both*) magnae partis harum regionum, tum (*and*) etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit : nunc esse regem Galbam.

Ortus, *sprung* ; consido, *settle* ; habeo exploratum, *I know accurately* ; multum valeo, *I am strong* ; ferax, *adj.*, from fero, *I bear*.

V.—Caesar Remos cohortatus, omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum docet quanto opere intersit manus hostium distineri. Id fieri posse si suas copias Aedui in fines Bellovacorum introduxerint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias ad se venire vidit, neque iam longe abesse cognovit, flumen Axonam exercitum transducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit.

Liberi, *children* ; doceo, *I teach or inform* ; quanto opere, *how much* ; interest, *it is important* ; distineo, *dis, apart*, and teneo ; matura, *I hasten*.

VI.—Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octo. Id Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Gallorum atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi murus nudatus est, testudine facta portas succedunt murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, qui tum oppido praeerat, nuntium ad eum mittit : sese diutius sustinere non posse.

Aegre, *with difficulty* ; sustentatum est, impersonal from sustineo, *I hold out* ; testudo, *a testudo*, i.e., a shelter formed by locking shields ; succedo, *come up close to* ; subruo, *undermine* ; praesum, *I am in command of*, gov's dat.

VII.—Eo de media nocte Caesar, sagittarios et funditores subsidio oppidanis mittit ; quorum adventu Remis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis, ad castra Caesaris contenderunt.

Sagittarius, *archer* ; funditor, *slinger* ; propugno, *make a sally* ; paulisper, *a little while* ; moror, *I delay* ; vicus, *a village*.

VIII.—Caesar primo proelio supersedere statuit ; quotidie tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis posset et quid nostri auderent periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, ab utroque latere collis fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum, et ad extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta collocavit, ne hostes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto, duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat in castris relictis, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

Primo, *at first* ; supersedeo, *I refrain from* ; periclitor, *I try, test* ; fossam obduco, *I run a ditch across* ; castellum, *fort, redoubt* ; tormentum, *engine of war*.

IX.—Palus erat inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent hostes expectabant ; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos adgrederentur parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt.

Palus, *a marsh* ; impeditus, *embarrassed* ; protinus, *forthwith* ; vadum, *a ford, shallow place*.

X.—Caesar certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum et Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem transducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes repulerunt ; primos qui transierant interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi spem se fefellisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse domum reverti.

Spes me fallit, *I am disappointed* (lit. *hope deceives me* ; neque=et non).

XI.—Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re Caesar per speculatores cognita, insidias veritus, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen

moraretur praemisit. His Pedium et Cottam legatos praefecit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa millia passuum prosequuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt.

Consimilis, *exactly like* ; insidiae, *ambuscade* ; contineo, *keep in* ; moraretur, note the mood ; novissimus, *the rear* (lit. the last, newest or latest).

XII.—Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, Galli celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt.

Ex itinere, *on the march* ; vinea, *a shed, mantlet* ; ago (vineam), *bring up, bring to bear*.

XIII.—Caesar, obsidibus acceptis armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes maiores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere coeperunt. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque iⁿponeret, pueri mulieresque ex muro pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

Maior natu, *an older (man)* ; tendo, *stretch* ; accessisset—poneret, note the change of tense.

XIV.—Pro his Divitiacus facit verba : Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse : impulsos a suis principibus Populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui huius consilii principes fuissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos sed etiam pro his Aeduos ut sua clementia in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum.

Princeps (1) *chieftain*, (2) *leader, instigator* ; in eos, *towards them* ; amplifico, *make large, increase*.

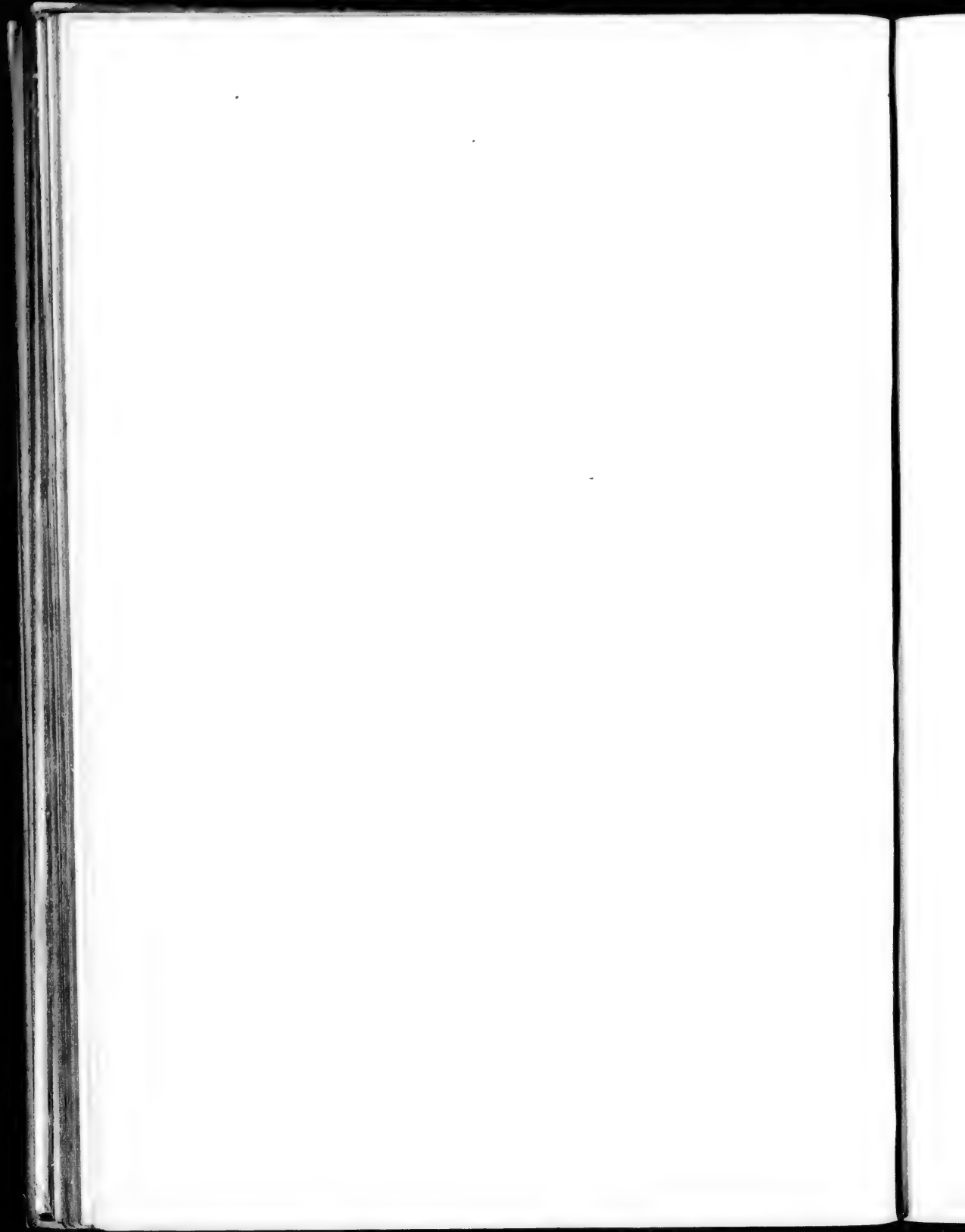
XV.—Caesar sese eos in fidem recepturum dixit : sexcentos obsides poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dederunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant : quorum de natura moribusque Caesar sic reperiebat : Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus : nihil pati vini inferri, esse homines ferus magnaeque virtutis ; incusare reliquos Belgas qui se Populo Romano dedidissent : confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

Attingo, *border on* ; mores, *habits* ; aditus, *access* ; infero, *I import* ; ferus, *fierce* ; incuso, *chide, upbraid* ; confirmo, *declare emphatically*.

XVI.—Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse : trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedissee adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare : exspectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere.

XVII.—His rebus cognitis exploratores praemittit qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cum ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures una iter facerent, quidam ex his nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque iis demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri. Non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

Qui deligant, note the mood, deligo, *I choose* ; dediticius, *surrendered (person)* ; unā, *together, along with* ; intercedo, *intervene, come between* ; negotium, *trouble* ; sarcinae, *hand-baggage* ; omitto, *let slip, leave alone*.



PROPER NAMES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. = adjective ; f. = fem. ; m. = masc. ; N. = noun ; n. = neuter ; pl. = plural ; sing. = singular.

A.

A = Aulus, -i ; N. m. : a Roman *praenomen*.

Adūātūci, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : the *Aduatuci*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*. According to Caesar they were descended from the Cimbrī and Teutones, who had been left behind to guard the baggage and cattle when these two nations made a descent on Italy: B. II., Chap. xxix. This is, however, contradicted when he says that the Belgae were the only Gallic tribe who kept the Cimbrī and Teutones out of their territory. They lived about the confluence of the Sabis (*Sambre*) and the Mosa (*Meuse*).

Adcantūannus, -i ; N. m.: *Adeantuannus*, a chief of the Sotiates. He endeavoured together with six hundred devoted partisans (*soldurii*) to escape from the town of the Sotiates when it was attacked by Crassus, one of the lieutenants of Caesar. He was unsuccessful in his attempt and was driven back into the town and forced to surrender: B. III., Chap. xxii.

Aedūs, -a, -um ; adj.: an *Aeduan*. The Aedui were a powerful nation of Gaul. Their confederacy embraced all the tract of country between the *Allier*, the middle *Loire*, and the *Saône*, and extended a little below this river to the south. Their capital was *Bibracte*. When Caesar came into Gaul he found the *Aedui* had been overcome by their rivals, the *Arverni* and the *Sequani*, who had called in the aid of Ariovistus, a German prince. Caesar espoused the cause of the Aedui, and restored them to their former place of power.

Aemīlius, -i ; N. m.: *L. Aemilius*, a Roman officer in command of a *decuria* of Gallic cavalry: B. I., Chap. xxiii.

Afrīcus, -i ; m.: the *south-west* wind. Still called by the modern Italians *Africo*.

Agedincum, -i ; n.: capital of the Senones, on the Yonne, a tributary of the Seine, now called *Sens*.

Aldūasbis, -is ; N. m.: also called the Dubis (now *Doubs*), a river on which Vesontio (now *Besançon*), the chief town of the Aedui, was situated. The word Dubis meant the *black* river: cp. Keltic *dhu*, "black," as in the modern names *Dulas*, *Doulas*, *Dowlas*, *Diggles*, *Dublin*. Alduasbis means, "the river of black rocks."

Allōbrōges, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Allobroges*, a people of Gaul between the Isara (*Isère*) and the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) in the country occupied by *Dauphine*, *Savoy*, and *Piedmont*. Their chief city was Vienna (*Vienne*), about thirteen miles below Lugdunum (*Lyon*). The name means "highlanders," from *al*, "high"; *broga*, "land."

Alpes, -ium; N. pl. f.: *the Alps* derive their name from the Keltic *alp*, meaning "lofty." Their length is about 600 English miles. The following are the divisions generally given to this chain: *Alpes Maritimae*, from Nice to Mt. Viso; *Alpes Cottiae*, from Mt. Viso to Mt. Cenis; *Alpes Graiae*, from Mt. Iseran to Little St. Bernard; *Alpes Peninae*, from the Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhine and Rhone; *Alpes Rhaeticae*, from the St. Gothard to Mt. Brenner in the Tyrol; *Alpes Noricae*, from Mt. Brenner to the head of the river Plavis; *Alpes Carnicae* vel *Juliae*, extending to the confines of Illyricum.

Ambarri, -orum; N. pl. m.: a people of Gallia Celtica, situated between the Aedui and the Allobroges, along either bank of the Arar (*Saône*).

Ambiāni, -orum; N. m. pl.: *the Ambiani*, a tribe of Gallia Belgica, to the north of the Bellovaci, and the river Samara (*Somme*). They had as their capital Samarobriva, on the Samara. This town was afterwards called Ambiani (now *Amiens*). They occupied that part of modern *Picardie*, now called *Department de la Somme*.

Ambiliāti, -orum; N. pl. m.: *the Ambiliati*, a people of Ancient Gaul, in the neighbourhood of the modern Abbeville.

Ambiorix, -igis; m.: *Ambiorix*, king of the Eburones.

Ambivāriti, -orum; N. pl. m.: *the Ambivariti*, a people of Ancient Gaul, near the Mosa (*Meuse*).

Anartes, -ium; m.: a Dacian tribe of the Theiss.

Ancalites, -ium; m. pl.: a British tribe, near Oxford, that surrendered to Caesar.

Andes, -ium; N. m. pl.: *the Andes*, a Gallic tribe that occupied the modern *Anjou*, or what is now called *Department de la Mayenne*. They occupied the north bank of the Liger (*Loire*), not far from its mouth. Tacitus and Pliny called them Andecavi or Andegavi. Caesar says that they were near the sea, but in this statement he is inaccurate, as the Nannetes intervened: B. II., Chap. xxxv.; B. III., Chap. vii.; B. VII., Chap. iv.

Andōcumbōrius, -i; N. m.: a colleague of Iccius in the embassy which the Remi sent to announce their submission to Caesar.

Antistius, -i; m.: *Caius Antistius Regius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Aquileia, -ae; N. f.: a celebrated city in Northern Italy, in the territory of Venetia, between the Alsa and Natiso, and about seven miles from the sea.

Aquītānia, -ae; N. f.: a district of Gaul between the Garumna (*Garonne*) and the Pyrenees. According to Strabo, the Aquitani differed from the Gauls both in physical features and in language. They resembled the Iberians.

Aquītāni, -orum; N. m. pl.: *the Aquitanians*, one of the three great divisions of Gaul inhabiting Aquitania, the district between the Garumna (*Garonne*) and the Pyrenees. They resembled the Iberi rather than the Gauls.

Arar, -āris; N. m.: *the Arar* (now the *Saône*), a river of Gaul, rising in Mons Vosegus (now *Voges*) and after a southern course falling into the Rhodanus (*Rhone*). The city of Lugdunum (now *Lyon*) stands at the junction of the two rivers: B. I, Chap. XII.

Arduenna, -ae; f.: *the Ardennes* forest of Gaul. According to Caesar, it reached from the Rhine and the territories of the Treveri to those of the Nervii, being upwards of fifty miles in length. The origin of the word is either from *ard* *an*, i.e., "the profound," "the deep" forest; or from *ard*, "hard"; *enna*, "pasture."

Arīōvistus, -i; N. m.: a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater portion of the kingdom and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is by some derived from the German *Heer*, an army; *Fürst*, a leader; or from *Aar*, an eagle; and *vistus*, a Latinized form of *first* = *hurst*, a nest, i.e. the word = *eyry*.

Armorīcus, -a, -um; adj.: *Armorican*. The ancient Armorica comprised *Brittany* and part of *Normandy*. The word is from *ar*, "on," and *mor*, "the sea."

Aruncūleius, -i; N. m.: *Lucius Arunculeius Cotta*, one of the legati in Caesar's army in Gaul. When Ambiorix, a king of the Eburones was seeking to withdraw him and his colleague Sabinus from winter quarters, Cotta was opposed to leaving the encampment, but finally yielded. The Roman army was drawn into an ambuscade, and both he and his colleague fell.

Arverni, -ōrum; N. pl.: a powerful tribe of Gaul, whose territories lay between the sources of the *Allier* and *Dordogne*, branches of the *Loire* and *Garonne*. The district is now *Auvergne*. The name is from *ar* or *al*, "high"; and *verann* (*fevarann*), "country" or "region."

Ātrēbas, -ātis; adj.: *an Atrebatian*.

Atrēbātes, -um; N. m. pl.: *the Atrebatas*, a native of *Gallia Belgica* of high renown for valour. Their territory lay s.e. from that of the Morini and s.w. from that of the Nervii, answering to the modern *Artois* in the *Département du Pas de Calais*. Their chief town was Nemetacum (now *Arras*, or as the Flemings call it, *Atrecht*).

Atrius, -i; m.: *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army, left to look after the fleet when Caesar invaded Britain.

Aulerci, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: *the Aulerci*, a general term applied to four different tribes in Gaul:

- (1) *Aulerci Brannonices*, clients of the Aedui, whose territory lay between the latter and the Sequani, and corresponded to the modern *Brienne*.
- (2) *Aulerci Cenomanni*: s.w. from the former, above the Andes and Turones; and west of the Carnutes, their country corresponded to the modern *Département de la Sarthe*. Their capital was Suindinum, afterwards Canomanni, now *Mans*.
- (3) *Aulerci Eburones*: often called simply *Eburones*, s.w. of the Carnutes, along the west bank of the Sequana (*Seine*), above Lutetia (*Paris*). Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Ebuovices, now *Evreux*.
- (4) *Aulerci Diablintes*, north-west of the Cenomanni, their chief town was Neodunum, afterward Diablintes (now *Jableins*).

Ausci, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Ausci*, a people of Aquitania in ancient Gaul.

Auruncūleius, -i ; N. sing. m.: *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Axōna, -ae ; N. m.: *Axona*, a river of Gaul, passing through the country of the Remi. It is now called *Aisne*. It flows s.w., joins the Isara (*Isère*), and both fall into the Sequana (*Seine*).

B.

Bacēnis, -is (scil. *silva*) ; adj.: a forest in Germany separating the Suevi from the Cherusci. It corresponds to the western portion of the *Thuringian Forest*, and formed part of the Hercynia Silva or *Black Forest*.

Bacūlus, -i ; N. m.: *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion of the first rank in the army of Caesar, who on several occasions distinguished himself by his valour: B. II., Chap. XXV. ; B. III., Chap. V. ; B. VI., Chap. XXXVIII.

Balēāres, -ium ; N. m. pl.: a name given to the people of the islands of Majorca and Minorca off the coast of Spain. The name was also applied to the islands themselves. The word is probably from *βάλλειν*, "to throw," or "shoot," and referred to the skill of the people in the use of the sling or the arrow.

Bātāvōrum Insūla : that portion of Holland bounded on two sides by the northern and southern branches of the Rhine and on the third by the sea. It corresponds at the present day to a part of the Duchy of *Gueldres* and a large portion of Southern Holland: B. IV., Chap. X.

Balventius, -i ; m.: *Titus Balventius*, a brave centurion of Caesar: v., 25.

Bāsīlus, -i ; m.: *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers ; afterwards one of his conspirators.

Belgae, -ārum ; N. m. pl.: a people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Celtæ in the time of Caesar by the rivers Matrona (*Marne*) and Sequana (*Seine*).

Belgium, -i ; n.: the land of the *Belgae* ; the modern *Belgium*.

Bellōvāci, -ōrum ; N. m. pl.: *the Bellovaci*, a powerful nation of the Belgæ, to the north of the Parisii. Their capital was Caesaromagus, afterwards Bellovaci, now *Beauvais*.

Bibracte, -is ; N. n.: a large town of the Aedui in Gaul on the *Arroux*, one of the tributaries of the *Loire*. It was afterwards called Augustodunum, which name still remains in the modern *Autun*.

Bibrax, -actis ; N. n.: *Bibrax*, a town of the Remi, eight miles from the Axona, (now *Aisne*). Some say it corresponds to the modern *Bray*, others to *Braisne* others to *Bièvre*.

Bigerriōnes, -um ; N. pl. m.: *the Bigerriones*, a people of Aquitania, at the foot of the Pyrenees, to the west of the Garumni

Bibrōci, -ōrum ; m. pl.: a tribe in the s.e. of Britain (*Bray*?).

Bitūrīges, -um; N. m. pl.: a name given to two nations of Gaul:

(1) *Bituriges Cubi*, a people of Gallia Celtica, west of the Aedui, their chief city was Avaricum, afterwards Bituriges, (now *Bourges*) and their territory corresponded to a part of the modern *Berry* and *Bourbonnais*, in the *Département du Cher et de l'Indre*.

(2) *Bituriges Vivisei* were situated near the mouth of the Garumna (*Garonne*) and their capital was Burdigala (now *Bordeaux*).

Boduognātus, -i; N. m.: a leader of the Nervii in the attack made by Caesar.

Boli, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a people of Celtic Gaul, who dwelt on the waters of the *Sollac*. From Gaul they passed into Germany and settled in the present Bohemia, a corruption of *Boierheim*, i.e., the residence of the Boii. They afterwards went to *Bavaria*, a corruption of *Boaria*. Their name means "the terrible ones"; from Celtic *bo*, "fear."

Bratuspantiūm, -i; N. n.: a town of the Bellovaci, near the village of *Gratepeuche*, between *Breteuil* and *Montidier*.

Britanni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Britons*.

Britannia, -ae; N. f.: the island of *Great Britain*.

Britannicus, -a, -um; adj.: *British*.

Brūtus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Brutus*, the commander of the Roman fleet in the war against the Veneti.

C.

Cabūrus, -i; N. m.: Caius Valerius Caburus, a Gallic chieftain who obtained the right of Roman citizenship (*civitas*). He is afterwards mentioned as holding the supreme power among the Helvii: B. VII., Chap. LXV.

Caerōēsi, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: the *Caeroesi*, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Treveri and the river Mosa (*Meuse*), who along with the Condrusi, Eburones, and Paemani went under the general term of the Germans. According to some the name still exists in the little river *Chiers*, between *Mouzon* and *Sedan*: B. II., Chap. IV.

Caesar, -āris; N. m.: Caius Julius Caesar: see Introduction.

Cāius, -i; N. m.: a Roman *praenomen*.

Calēti, -ōrum, also **Calētes, -iūm**; N. pl.: the *Caleti* or *Caletes*, a people of Gallia Belgica. They probably occupied the district not far from the neighbourhood of the modern *Rouen*.

Cantabri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Cāntabri*, a warlike people of the N.E. of Spain, along the shores of the Sinus Cantabricus (*Bay of Biscay*). Their country corresponded to the modern Biscay and part of *Asturias*.

Carcāso, -ōnis; N. sing. m.: *Carcaso*, a city of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Roman Province. It was situated on the river Atax (*Avère*) and lay inland in a western direction from Narbo Martius (*Narbonne*). It is now called *Carcassonne*.

Carnūtes, -um; N. pl.: the *Carnutes*, a nation of Gaul, between the Sequana (*Seine*) and the Liger (*Loire*) and west of the Parisii. They were clients of the Remi. Their territory was the chief seat of the Druids, who held here their courts of justice. Their chief town was Autricum (now *Chartres*): B. II., Chap. xxxv.; B. V., Chap. xxv., xxix., liv., etc.

Carvilius, -i; m.: a British King of Kent.

Cassi, -ōrum; m. pl.: a tribe of Britain that surrendered to Caesar.

Cassianus, -a, -um; adj.: of or belonging to Cassius.

Cassius, L.; N. m.: Lucius Cassius was consul 107 B.C. In that year a coalition was formed of the Cimbri and Teutones. After devastating Gaul, they united with the Helvetii and resolved to attack the Roman *Provincia* at several points. The Helvetian tribe *Tigurini* under Divico attacked the territory of the Allobroges by the bridge of Geneva and the fords of the Rhone. The rest of the Helvetii moved south. The Romans divided their forces. Cassius, the consul, hastened to Geneva, while his *legatus*, Scaurus, moved against the combined horde of Cimbri and Teuto. Both commanders were unfortunate. Cassius and his army were cut to pieces on the borders of Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), while Scaurus was defeated and taken prisoner.

Casticus, -i; N. m.: a chief of the Sequani, on whom Orgetorix prevailed to seize the supreme power in his native State.

Cassivellaunus, -i; m.: *Cassivellaunus*; Casswallen, commander-in-chief of the British army against Caesar.

Cātamantoloedis, -is; N. m.: the father of Casticus.

Caturiges, -um; N. m. pl.: a Gallic nation dwelling among the Cottian Alps. Their capital was Caturiges, traces of which are still to be found at *Chourges*, between *Gap* and *Embrun* in the department of *des Hautes-Alpes*.

Catuvolcus, -i; m.: Catuvoleus, chief of the Eburones, who poisoned himself after the failure of an insurrection he had promoted.

Cavarinus, -i; m.: chief of the Senones.

Carvilius, -i; m.: a petty British chief.

Celtae, also Keltae, -ārum; N. m. pl.: one of the tribes that inhabited Ancient Gaul. The word is derived either from *ceilt* or *ceiltach*, "an inhabitant of the forest," or from the root *cel*, "high"; (cp. *celsus, columna*), hence *Celtae* means "highlanders."

Cenimagni, -ōrum; m. pl.: a British tribe in Suffolk, which surrendered to Caesar.

Centrōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: a people of Gaul who dwelt among the Alpes Graiae. They were defeated by Caesar in several battles. Their chief town was Forum Claudii Centronum (now *Centron*).

Cherusci, -ōrum; m. pl.: a German tribe between the Weser, the Elbe, and the Harz Mountains.

- Cicēro**, -ōnis ; m. : *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, brother of the celebrated orator, M. Tullius Cicero. He was one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.
- Cimbērius**, -i ; N. m. : *Cimberius*, a brother of Nasua, who along with the latter was joint commander of the Suevi when they were endeavouring to cross the Rhine and form a junction with Ariovistus. When the German princes were overthrown they retreated : B. I., Chap. xxxvii.
- Cimbri**, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : a people of Central Europe who invaded the Roman empire in the time of Marius. They were a branch of the Celtic tribe. They are supposed to have had their origin in the Cimbric Chersonese (*Jutland*).
- Cingetorix**, -igis ; m. : (1) a Gaul, attached to Caesar, and the rival of Indutiomarus for the chief power among the Treviri ; (2) a British chief of Kent.
- Cisrhēnān-us**, -a, -um ; adj. [*cis*, "on this side" ; *Rhēnus*, "Rhine"] : "lying on this" (*i.e.* the Italian) "side of the Rhine."
- Claudius**, -i ; n. : Appius Claudius, consul with L. Domitius B.C. 54.
- Cnēius**, -i ; N. m. : *Cneius*, a Roman *praenomen*.
- Cnēius**, -i ; m. : a Roman *praenomen*.
- Cōcōsātes**, -ium ; N. pl. m. : the *Cocosates*, a people of Aquitania, lying along the coast of the Sinus Cantabricus (*Bay of Biscay*). Their chief city was Cocossa on the coast, some distance above Aquae Augustae (now *Aeqs* or *Dun*) : B. III., Chap. xxvii.
- Commius** ; m. : a leader of the Atrebrates.
- Commius**, -i ; N. sing. m. : *Commius*, a chief of the Atrebatians.
- Condrūsi**, -ōrum ; m. pl. : the *Condrusi*, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the right bank of the Mosa (*Meuse*), in the district of the modern *Namur* and *Liege*.
- Considius**, -i ; N. m. : Publius Considius was an officer in Caesar's army. He was employed in the war against the Helvetii.
- Cotta**, -ae ; N. m. : Lucius Arunculeius Cotta : see *Arunculeius*.
- Corus**, -i ; m. : *Corus* or *Caurus*, the *North-west* wind.
- Crassus**, -i ; N. m. : M. Licinius Crassus, surnamed *Dives*, was a member of the first triumvirate. He was noted for his enormous wealth. At *Carrhae* he fell in battle against the Parthians.
- Crētes**, -um ; N. m. pl. : the *Cretans* : the inhabitants of Crete (now *Candia*), an island in the eastern part of the Mediterranean Sea, celebrated for their skill in archery.
- Curiosolitae**, -ārum ; N. m. pl. : the *Curiosolitae*, an Armorican nation in Gaul, north of the Veneti and northwest of the Redones. They occupied the district of the modern *St. Malo*, between *Dinant* and *Lambelle*, in Brittany : B. II., Chap. xxxiv.

D.

- Dacus**, -i ; m. : a *Dacian*. The Dacians occupied the S.E. provinces of the modern Kingdom of Austria.
- Danūbius**, -i ; m. : the *Danube*, the great river of Central Europe.
- Décimus**, -i ; N. sing. m. : *Decimus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

- Dēcūmānus**, -a, -um; adj.: *Decuman*, a name given to one of the gates of a Roman camp.
- Dīāblintes**, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Diablintes*, a branch of the Aulerci (see *Aulerci*).
- Dis**, **Ditis**; m.: *Pluto*, the god of the lower world.
- Dīvīco**, -ōnis; N. m.: an influential noble among the Helvetii. He was the leader of the embassy sent to Caesar by the Helvetii after their defeat.
- Dīvītīācus**, -i; N. m.: a leading nobleman of the Aedui, who possessed great influence with Caesar in consequence of his fidelity and attachment to the Romans.
- Dubis**, -is; N. m.: *the Dubis* (now the *Doubs*), was a river of Gaul, rising in the chain of Jura, and falling after a course of sixty leagues into the Arar (now *Saône*), near Cabillonum (now *Chalons*): B. I., Chap. xxxviii.
- Domitius**, -i; m.: L. Domitius Abenobarbus, consul with Appuis Claudius Pulcher, B.C. 54.
- Druīdes**, -um; m. pl.: *the Druids* or priests of the ancient Britons and other Keltic tribes. The probable derivation is from the Keltic *der*, "an oak"; *wydd*, "mistletoe," and *dyn*, "a man"; hence "the man who gains supernatural information from the mistletoe on the oak."
- Dumnōrix**, -igis; N. m.: a powerful and ambitious chieftain of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. He was disaffected towards Caesar and the Romans, and when the former was on the point of setting out to Britain, and had ordered Dumnorix to accompany him, the Aeduan on a sudden marched away with his cavalry. He was overtaken and slain.
- Durocortorum**, -i; n.: capital of the Remi, now *Rhenni*, situated on the Vele, a branch of the Aisne.

E.

- Ebūrōnes**, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Eburones*, a nation of Gallia Belgica, to the s.w. of the Ubii. Caesar mentions them as Germans. Their territory lay on both sides of the Mosa (*Meuse*), from the modern *Liege* to *Aix-la-Chapelle*. Their chief town was Aduatuca: B. II., Chap. IV.
- Ebūrōvices**, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Eburovices*, a branch of the Aulerci; (see *Aulerci*).
- Elūsātes**, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Elusates*, a people of Aquitania, to the northwest of the Volcae Tectosages. Their chief town was Elusa (now *Euse*): B. III., Chap. xxvii.
- Eratosthēnes**, -is; m.: a Greek born at Cyrene, in Africa, B.C. 276; appointed librarian to the Alexandrian library and died in 692 B.C. of starvation because he was tired of life. He acquired fame as a geographer, mathematician and critic.
- Esūbīi**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Esubii*, a people in the Alpes Maritimae, north of the Edenates. They are sometimes called Esubiani. The river *Ubaye* runs through what was formerly their territory: B. III., Chap. vii.
- Essui**, -orum; m. pl.: a people of Gaul, supposed to be the same as the Sali, and lying on the north side of the Diablintes and Cenomani. Their chief city was Sali (now *Sez*), on the River Olna (now *Orne*).

Fabius,
Flaccus

Gabinus
propos
war ag

Galba, -

Galba, -
Belgie
Roman
German

Galli, -ō

Gallia, -
of Pie
or U
Cisalpe

Gallicus

Gallus, -

Garites,
and A

Garumn
the Ga

Gārum
(mont
Accord

Gēnāva,
Lemni

Gelduni
sea co

Germān

Germān
word i
mann
"war,

Graecus
of Sou

Graiōcē

F.

Fabius, -i; m.: Caius Fabius, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Flaccus, -i; N. m.: *Flaccus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

G.

Gabinus, -i; N. m.: *Aulus Gabinus* was tribune of the Commons 69 B.C., and proposed the *lex Gabina* giving Pompey complete charge of the Roman fleet in the war against the pirates.

Galba, -ae; N. sing. m.: *Servius Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Galba, -ae; N. m.: *Galba*, King of the Suessiones, appointed commander of the Belgic forces. After the victory of Caesar, his sons were delivered up to the Roman general as hostages: B. II, Chap. IV, XIII. His name is derived from the German *gelb*, "yellow," or from *kalb*, "a calf."

Galli, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: the inhabitants of *Gallia*; the Gauls.

Gallia, -ae; N. f.: *Gaul*, corresponding to France and the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia, and Lombardy. Gaul was divided in *Gallia Transalpina*, or *Ulterior*, or Gaul beyond the Alps, comprising nearly all France; and *Gallia Cisalpina*, or *Citerior*, or Gaul, this side of the Alps, *i.e.*, Northern Italy.

Gallicus, -a -um; adj.: *Gallie*: of or belonging to *Gallia*.

Gallus, -i; N. sing. m.: *a Gaul*.

Garites, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Garites*, a people of Aquitania, between the Elusates and Ausci, in part of *Gascony*, or the more modern department of *du Gers*.

Garumni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Garumni*, a Gallic tribe, near the head waters of the *Garumna* (*Garonne*), in the department of *de la Haute-Garonne*.

Gārumna, -ae; N. f.: now the *Garonne*, a river of Gaul. It runs from the Pyrenees (*montes Pyrennaei*) and empties into the Bay of Biscay (*Oceanus Cantabricus*). According to Caesar, the *Garumna* separated Aquitania from *Gallia Celtica*.

Gēnāva, -ae; N. f.: a city of the Allobroges, at the western extremity of Lake Lemmanus (*Geneva*) on the south bank of the river *Rhodanus* (*Rhone*).

Geiduni, -ōrum; m. pl.: *the Geiduni* or *Gorduni*, a people of Belgic Gaul on the sea coast, above the *Morini*.

Germāni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *Germans*.

Germānia, -ae; N. f.: a district of Central Europe inhabited by the Germans. The word is probably from either (1) *wer*, "war" (the Romans softening the *w* to *g*) and *mann*, "a man," so the *Germani* means "warriors," or (2) from the Celtic *gerr*, "war," and *mann*, "a man." Other derivations are given.

Graecus, -a, -um; adj.: *Grecian*, a name given to an inhabitant of Greece, a country of Southern Europe.

Graīōcéll, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a tribe of Gaul dwelling near the Alps.

Grudii, -ōrum ; m. pl. : a Belgic tribe, subject to the Nervii, whose territories lay between the *Scaldis* (Scheldt) and the ocean. Their name still survives in the modern *land van Graede* (district of *Graede*), above *L'Ecluse* on the north.

H.

Harūdes, -um ; N. pl. m. : a German tribe, in the vicinity of the Marcomanni, between the Rhine and the head waters of the river Danube. This district was in the vicinity of the present cities of *Rothweil* and *Fursternberg*.

Helvētius, -a, -um ; adj. : *Helvetian*.

Helvētīi, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : a nation of Gaul conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that Helvetia corresponded to modern *Switzerland*, but the boundaries of the ancient province were of less extent than the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhenus and Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*) ; on the south by the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) and Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), and on the west by Mt. Jura.

Hercynia (scil. *Silva*) : an extensive forest in Germania. According to Caesar, the breadth was a nine days' journey, while the length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Nemetes and Rauraci, along the Danube to the country of the Daci and Anartes. It included the present *Black Forest*, which separates Alsace from Suabia ; the *Stegger* in Franconia ; the *Spissard* and *Odenwald* on the borders of Hesse Darmstadt ; the *Thuringer* in Tharingia ; the *Bohemerwald*, forming the boundary of Bohemia, and the *Hartz* mountains in Lunenburg. The word is said to be from the German word *hartz*, "resin," and still remains in the present *Hartz*, or from *hart*, "high."

Hibernia, -ae, f. : Ireland ; for the derivation see note on B. v., Chap. xiii.

Hispania, -ae ; N. f. : *Spain*. The name is derived from a corrupt form of *Hesperia* (*Ἑσπερία*) "the western land" : cp. *ἑσπερος*, "the evening star" ; *vesper*, "evening." From *Hesperia* comes Latin *Hispania*, Spanish *España*, English *Spain*.

I.

Iccius, -i ; N. m. : *Iccius*, a nobleman of the Remi, sent along with Andocumborius on an embassy to acknowledge the submission of their nation to Caesar.

Indutiomārus, -i ; m. : a leading man among the Treveri and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans.

Illyricum, -i ; N. n. : *Illyricum*, the modern district occupied by *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia*, *Herzegovina*.

Itālia, -ae ; N. f. : Italy ; a country of Southern Europe.

Itius, -i ; m. : a harbour of Gaul, said to be the modern *Boulogne*.

Iūnius, -i ; m. : Quintus Iunius, one of Caesar's officers.

Iuppiter, Iōvis ; m. : Iuppiter, son of Saturn, chief of the Roman gods.

Iūra, -ae ; N. f. : a range of mountains extending from the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) to the Rhenus (*Rhine*) and separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of the Sequani. The word is from the Celtic, *Jou-ra*, "the domain of God" or "Iuppiter."

L.

Laberius, -i ; m. : Quintus Laberius Durens, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

Labiēnus, -i ; N. m. : *Titus Labienus* was one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar for Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.

Lātōbrīges, -um ; or **Latobrigi, -ōrum** ; N. m. pl. : a people of Belgic Gaul. They extended along the banks of the Rhine, about ninety miles west of Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*).

Lemannus, -i ; N. m. : now Lake of *Geneva*, separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of Gaul. It is about 45 miles long by 11 wide.

Lēōpontii, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : *the Leopontii*, a Gallic tribe dwelling near the sources of the Rhine among the Leopontine Alps, which separated Italy from Helvetia. Their district corresponded to the Val Levantina, that part of the Alps.

Lexovii, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : *the Lexovii*, a nation of Celtic Gaul, on the coast below the mouth of the Sequana. Their capital was Noviomagus, afterwards called Lexovii (now *Lisieux*) : B. III, Chap. IX, XVII ; B. VII, Chap. LXXV.

Levoci, -ōrum ; m. pl. : a nation of Belgic Gaul on the river Scaldis (*Scheldt*) and northwest of the Nervii, lying between these and the Grudii. Their territory in part forms the present *Louvanie*.

Lēuci, -ōrum ; *the Leuci*, a people of Gallia Belgica.

Lingōnes, -um ; N. m. pl. : a people of Gaul, whose territories included Mons Vosgesus (*Vosges*), and consequently, the source of the Mosa (*Meuse*) and Matrona (*Marne*). They had a town named also *Lingones* (now *Langres*) and their territory corresponded to the modern department of *de la Haute-Marne*.

Līger, -ōris ; N. sing. m. : *the Loire*, the largest river in Gaul. It rises in Mons Cebennus (now *Cevennes*), and for the one half of its course was directly north, then turns to the west and falls into the Atlantic between the territories of the Pictones and the Nannetes. The Līger receives numerous tributaries, the most remarkable of which are the Elaver (now *Allier*), Carus (now *Cher*), Andria (now *Indre*) and Vincennia (now *Vienne*).

Liscus, -i ; m. : the chief magistrate or Vergobret of the Aedui, who gave information to Caesar of the conduct and designs of Dumnorix.

Liscus, -i ; N. m. : *Liscus* was chief magistrate or Vergobret of the Aedui, who gave to Caesar information of the conduct and designs of Dumnorix.

Lucanius, -i ; m. : Quintus Lucanius, a brave centurion.

Lucius : Lucius, a Roman *praenomen*.

Lugotorix, -igis ; m. : a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp.

Lutētia, -aē ; f. : the capital of the Parisii, on an island of the Sequana (*Seine*), now *Paris*. The city first began to be of importance under the first French Kings and was extended to both banks of the river, the island being connected with them by bridges.

M.

M = **Marcus** : a Roman *praenomen*.

Māgētōbrīa, -ae ; N. f. : a town, near which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces of the Gauls. Some say it corresponds to the modern *Moigte de Broie*, near the village of *Pontailier* : others to *Bingium*, now *Bingen*.

Mandrubātius, -i ; m. : the chief of the *Trinobantes* in Britain, who attached himself to Caesar.

Marcomāni, -ōrum : the *Marcomani*, a German people. The word is from German *mark* ; English *march* : hence the name means *march, or, border men*.

Marcus : a Roman *praenomen*.

Mārius, -i ; N. m. : *Caius Marius*, a celebrated Roman general, opponent of Sulla. (See Roman History.)

Mars, Martis ; m. : Mars, the Roman god of war.

Matrōna, -ae ; N. f. : a river of Gaul, now the *Marne*, which formed part of the old boundary between *Gallia Belgica* and *Gallia Celtica*.

Meldi, -ōrum ; m. pl. : a nation of *Gallia Belgica* occupying both sides of the river Rhine ; their chief town was *Menapiorum Castellum*, now *Kessel*.

Mēnāpii, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : the *Menapii*, a nation of *Gallia Belgica*, occupying both sides of the lower Rhine. Their fortress was called *Castellum Menapiorum* (now *Kessel*) on the *Mosa* (*Meuse*) : B. II., Chap. IV.

Mercurius, -i ; m. : Mercury, the Roman god, patron of traders and thieves ; and also the god of eloquence and messenger of Juppiter. The name is from *merces*, "gain."

Municius, -i ; m. : *L. Municius Rufus*, one of Caesar's officers in the war against Ambiorix, and afterwards stationed in winter quarters among the Remi. He sided with Caesar in the civil war, but afterwards became one of Caesar's assassins. The year after Caesar's death, B.C. 43, he was killed by his own slaves.

Mona, -ae ; f. : the isle of Anglesey. See note B. V., Chap. XIII.

Moritasgus, -i ; m. : chief of the *Senones*, brother of Cavarinus.

Munatius, -i ; m. : *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's, appointed with M. Crassus and C. Trebonius to the command of the three legions that wintered in Gaul.

Messāla, -ae ; N. m. : *Marcus Valerius Messala* was consul along with Marcus Piso B.C. 61.

Mettius, -i ; N. m. : *Mettius*, a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

Mōrini, -ōrum ; N. m. pl. : the *Morini*, a tribe of *Gallia Belgica*, whose territory lay in the district of Calais and Dunkirk, a part of their territory bordering on the sea. The name means "sea people" : being derived from the Celtic *mor*, "the sea" : cp. Lat. *mare*.

Mōsa, -ae ; N. sing. m. : the *Meuse*, a river of Gaul, rising among the *Lingones*, a little west of Mt. Vosgesus, and falling into the *Vahalis* (now *Waal*) : B. IV., Chap. X.

N.

Namēŭs, -i ; N. m. : a chieftain of the Helvetii, sent along with Veruodotius at the head of an embassy to Caesar.

Nannētes, -ŭm ; N. pl. m. : the *Nannetes*, a people of *Gallia Celtica* who dwelt about the district of the modern Nantes.

Nantŭātes, -ŭm ; N. pl. m. : the *Nantuates*, a people who dwelt in the neighbourhood of Geneva.

Narbo, -ōnis ; N. sing. m. : *Narbo*, an important city of Gaul on the river Atax (now *Aude*). It was subsequently the capital of the province of *Gallia Narbonensis*; B. III., Chap. xx.; B. VII., Chap. VII.; B. VIII., Chap. XL., VI.

Nasŭa, -ae ; N. m. : *Nasua*, a chief of the Suevi.

Nemētes, -um ; N. pl. m. : the *Nemetes*, a German tribe, along the west bank of the river Rhine occupying part of the *Grand Duchy of Baden*. Their chief town was *Noviomagus* (now *Spire*).

Nervīcus, -a, -um ; adj. : of or belonging to the *Nervii*.

Nervīi, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : the *Nervii*, a powerful nation of *Gallia Belgica*, whose territory was N.E. of that of the *Atrebates*. The river *Seuldis* (now *Scheldt*) passed through part of their territories. Their chief town was *Bagacum* (now *Bayay*), which was afterwards supplanted by *Cameracum* (now *Cambray*) and *Turnacum* (now *Tournay*).

Noreia, -ae ; N. f. : the capital of *Noricum*.

Norica : see *Noricum*.

Nōricum, -i ; N. n. : a province of the Roman empire, bounded on the north by the Danube, on the west by *Vindelicia* and *Rhaetia*, on the east by *Pannonia* and on the south by *Illyricum* and *Gallia Cisalpina*. The chief town was *Noreia*, the capital of *Norica* or the *Norici*. It was in days of Caesar besieged by the *Boii*.

Nōricus, -a, -um ; adj. : of or belonging to *Noricum*.

Nōviōdūnum, -i ; N. n. : *Noviodunum*. There were three towns of this name in Gaul : (1) *Noviodunum Suessionum*, a town of the *Suessiones*, now *Soissons* ; (2) *Noviodunum Aeduorum*, belonging to the *Aedui*, on the banks of *Liger* (*Loire*), now *Nevers* ; (3) *Noviodunum Biturigum*, a city of the *Bituriges*, now *Neuvy-sur-Baranjon*.

Nūmīdae, -ārum ; N. pl. m. : the *Numidians*, a people of Northern Africa, employed in the Roman armies as light skirmishers.

O.

Océānus, -i ; N. m. : the Atlantic Ocean.

Océlum, -i ; N. m. : a city among the Cottian Alps ; now *Usseau* in *Piedmont*.

Octodŭrus, -i ; N. sing. m. : now *Martigny* or *Martinach*, the chief town of the *Veragri* ; B. III., Chap. I.

Orgētōrix, -igis; N. m.: a nobleman among the Helvetii, ranking first, according to Caesar, in birth and riches. Full of ambition, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles and prevailed on his people to seek a country other than their native land. He was chosen to carry out the plans of the conspirators. His conduct fell under suspicion and he was put on trial. By the aid of his retainers he managed to rescue himself, but shortly afterwards died, as was suspected, by his own hand.

Osismīl, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Osismii*, a people of *Gallia Celtica*, in the N. W. of Gaul. They occupied the part of modern *Brittany*, around Cape Finisterre. In their country was *Brivates Portus* (now *Brest*).

P.

P=Publius: a Roman *praenomen*.

Pādus, -i; m.: the *Po*, the largest river of Italy. It rises in *Mons Vesulus* (*Mt. Viso*), near the source of the *Druentia* (now *Drance*), runs in an easterly direction for more than 500 miles and discharges its waters into the Adriatic about 30 miles south of the *Portus Venetus* (modern *Venice*).

Paemāni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Paemani*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, their territory lay on the eastern side of the *Mosa* (*Meuse*), not far from the modern *Liege*: B. II., Chap. IV.

Parisii, -ōrum; n. pl.: the *Parisii*, a Gallic tribe, south of the *Carnutes* and *Senones*, their chief city was *Lutetia Parisiorum*, now *Paris*.

Pedius, -i; N. m.: *Quintus Pedius*, a nephew or great-nephew of Caesar is spoken of as one of the *legati* of Caesar: B. II., Chap. II.

Petrosidius, -i; m.: *Lucius Petrosidius*, a standard-bearer in Caesar's army.

Pictōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: the *Pictones*, a Gallic tribe along the southern bank of the *Liger* (*Loire*). Their chief town was *Lominum*, afterwards *Pictones* (now *Poitiers*), in the department of *la Vienne*. They occupied the district of the modern *Poitou*.

Pirustae, -ārum; m. pl.: a tribe in *Illyricum*.

Piso, -onis; N. sing. m.: an Aquitanian. See B. IV., C. XII.

Piso, -ōnis; N. m.: *Lucius Piso*, consul 61 B.C., with *M. Messala*.

Piso, -ōnis; N. m.: *Lucius Piso* was consul 112 B.C. Five years after he served as lieutenant under the consul *Cassius*, but was slain, together with him, by the *Tugurini*. He was ancestor of *L. Piso*, Caesar's father-in-law.

Plancus, -i; m.: *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's army.

Pleumonii, -ōrum; m. pl.: a Gallic tribe N.E. of the *Atrebates*, dependents of the *Nervii* in *West Flanders*, west of the *Suessiones*.

Pompeius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Cneius Pompeius*, the Roman triumvir. (See Roman history.)

Praeconinus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Praeconinus*, a Roman *cognomen*.

Prēcīāni, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : *the Preciani*, a people of *Aquitania*.

Próvincīa, -ae ; N. sing. f. : *the Provincia*, the southern part of Gaul, called afterwards *Gallia Braccata* and *Gallia Narbonensis*.

Publius, -i ; N. sing. m. : a Roman *praenomen*.

Pullo, -ōnis ; m. : a centurion of Caesar's, rival of Vorenus.

Pyrennaei (scil. *montes*) : *the Pyrenees*, a range of mountains separating Gaul from Spain. The derivation of the word is from the Celtic *pyren* or *pyrn*, "a high mountain." From this root may be derived *Brenner* in the Tyrol ; *Pyern*, in Austria ; *Fernor*, in the Tyrol.

Q.

Q. Quintus : a Roman *praenomen*.

R.

Raurāci, -orum ; N. m. : a Gallic tribe above the Helvetii and between the Sequani and the Rhine. Their chief town was Rauracum, afterwards called Augusta Rauracorum, and now *Augst*, a small village near *Basle*.

Rēdōnes, -um ; N. pl. m. : *the Redones*, a tribe of *Gallia Lugdunensis*, occupying the district near the modern *Rennes*.

Rēmi, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : *the Remi*, a powerful Gallic nation whose capital was Dürōcortōrum, the modern *Rheims*.

Rhēnus, -i ; N. m. : *the Rhine*, rising in the Lepontine Alps, a little above *Mt. St. Gothard*, in the country of the *Grisons*. It passes through Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*), afterwards through Lake Acronius (*Tell*), nearly west to *Basilia (Basle)*. At this point it flows northerly, receiving various tributary streams, till it enters the North Sea. The derivation is from the Aryan root *sru*, "to flow."

Rhōdānus, -i ; N. m. : *the Rhone*, a river rising in the Lepontine Alps, not more than two leagues from the sources of the Rhine. It passes through Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), and flows in a swift current to the Sinus Gallicus (*Gulf of Lyons*). The word is derived also from the Aryan root *sru*, to flow."

Rōma, -ae ; N. f. : *Rome* : (derived from *sru*, "to flow," properly *Srouma*, "the stream town").

Rōmānus, -a, -um : *Roman*.

Roscius, -i ; m. : *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's officers sent to winter with a legion in the territory of the *Esubii*.

Rutēni, -ōrum ; N. pl. : *the Ruteni*, a people of *Gallia Aquitania*.

S.

Sabinus, -i ; N. m. : *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of the *legati* of Caesar.

Sabis, -is ; N. m. : the *Sabis* (now *Sambre*), a river of *Gallia Belgica*, rising among the *Nervii*, and joining the *Mosa (Meuse)* in the territory of the *Aduatuci*.

Samarobriva, -ae ; f. : a town of the *Ambiani* on the *Samara (Somme)*, hence called *Ambiani* (now *Amiens*).

Santōni, -ōrum; or **Santōnes, -um**: N. m. pl.: a people of Gallia Celtica, whose territories lay between the Pictones on the north and the Garumna on the south. Their chief town was Mediolanum, called Santones, now *Saintes*.

Scaldis, -is; m.: now the *Scheldt*, a river of Belgic Gaul, rising about 15 miles south of Camaracum (now *Cambray*) and falling into the German Ocean near the modern island of *Walcheren*.

Sedūni, -ōrum; pl. m.: a people of Helvetia, to the s.e. of Lacus Lemannus (lake of *Geneva*), and occupying the head waters of the Rhine. Their chief town was Sedūnum (now *Sion* or *Sitten*).

Segontīāci, -ōrum; pl. m.: a people of Britain, living probably in *Hampshire*.

Segonax, -ācis; m.: one of the four rulers of Kent at the time of Caesar's invasion.

Senōnes, -um; pl. m.: a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, to the northwest of the Aedui.

Sedūsīi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Sedusii*: a German tribe, forming part of the army of Ariovistus.

Segūsiāni, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a people of Gallia Celtica to the south of the Aedui and in whose territory lay the city of Lugdunum (*Lyons*). The chief town of their tribe was Forum Segusianorum (now *Feurs*).

Sēnōnēs, -um; N. pl.: the *Senones*, a people of Gallia Lugdunensis, whose capital was Agendicum (now *Lens*).

Sēquāna, -ae; N. f.: a river of Gaul, rising in the extreme northern part of the territory of the Aedui and falling into the Oceanus Britannicus (*English Channel*).

Sēquānus, -a, -um; adj.: a *Sequanian*. The Sequani were a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of Ariovistus to aid them against the Aedui. After the defeat of their German allies, they severely felt the power of the Aedui. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was Vesontic (now *Besançon*).

Sesūvīi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Sesuvii*, a people of Gallia Celtica, who occupied the modern diocese of *Siez*.

Sextius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Sextius*, a Roman name.

Sibuzates, -ium; N. pl. m.: the *Sibuzates*, a people, *Gallia Aquitanica*.

Silanus, -i; m.: *Marcus Silanus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Silius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Silius*, a Roman name.

Sotiātes, -um; N. pl. m.: the *Sotiates*, a people of *Gallia Aquitanica*.

Sulpitius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Sulpitius*, a Roman name.

Suēvī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Suevi*, a powerful tribe of northern and eastern Germany. Their name still exists in *Suabia*.

Sugambri, -ōrum; m. pl.: a German nation, in Caesar's time dwelling near the Rhine, but whose earlier settlements appear to have been further inland.

Suessiōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Suessiones*, a Gallic people who occupied the district around the modern town of *Soissons*.

Suēvus, -a, -um; adj.: of, or belonging to the *Suevi*, a powerful tribe in North-eastern Germany.

Sulla, -ae; N. m.: Lucius Cornelius Sulla, a celebrated Roman. He served as quaestor to Marius in Africa and afterwards was the great political opponent of his old commander. After gaining the highest offices of the State, he gave up the dictatorship, and died B.C. 79.

T.

T. = Titus: a Roman *praenomen*.

Tamēsis, -is; m.: the *Thames*.

Tarbelli, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Tarbelli*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Tarūsātes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Tarusates*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Tasgetius, -i; m.: the chief of the Carnutes, whom Caesar restored to supreme power.

Taximagulus, -i; m.: a British prince, one of the four kings of Kent.

Tectosāges, -um; m. pl.: a division of the Volcae, who lived in the western part of the province. Their capital was Tolosa (now *Toulouse*).

Tenchthēri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Tenchtheri*, a German city on the Rhine.

Terrasidius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Titus Terrasidius*, a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

Teutōnes, -um; also **Teutōni, -ōrum**; N. pl. m.: a name given to a branch of the great Germanic family. Along with the Cimbri they devastated northern Italy and Gaul from 113 to 102 B.C.

Tibrocci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Tibrocci*, a people of Germanic origin. Their capital was Brocomagus (now *Brumt*).

Tigūrīnus, -a, -um; adj.: a canton of the Helvetii, near Lake *Zürich*.

Tītūrīus: see *Sabinus*.

Titūrīus, -īl; N. sing. m.: *Titurius*, a Roman name.

Tolōsa, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Tolosa* (now *Toulouse*), a tribe in southern Gaul.

Tōlōsātes, -um; N. pl.: a people of Aquitania. Their chief town was *Tolosa* (now *Toulouse*).

Transrhēnāni, -a, -um; see *Transrhenanus*.

Transrhēnanus, -a, -um; [*trans*, "across"; *Rhēnus*, "the Rhine";]: *a dweller across the Rhine, that which is across the Rhine*.

Trebonius, -i; m.: *Caius Trebonius*, a Roman knight.

Trēvēri (also Trēvīri), -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Treveri*, a nation of Gallia Belgica N.E. of the Rhine, between the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Rhenus (*Rhine*); their chief city was Augusta Treverorum (now *Treves*).

Tribrōci, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Tribroci*, a German tribe on the left bank of the Rhine, in the modern Alsace.

Tulingi, -ōrum ; N. pl.: a German tribe, whose territories lay to the north of the Helvetii. The modern *Stuhlingen* marks the site of the ancient capital.

Turōnes, -um ; N. pl. m.: *the Turones*, a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, which lay along the banks of the Liger (*Loire*). Their capital was *Caesarodunum*, afterwards *Turones* now (*Tours*).

U.

Ubi, -um , m. pl.: a German nation on the right bank of the Rhine. During the reign of Augustus they were removed by Agrippa to the opposite or left bank in Gaul. At a subsequent period Agrippina, the mother of Nero, established a colony of veterans in their territory, called by her *Colonia Agrippinae* (now *Cologne*).

Unelli, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Unelli*, a people to the N.W. " that is now *Nor-mandy*. Their chief town was *Coriallum* (now *Gouril*).

Usīpētes, -um ; N. pl. m.: *the Usipetes*, a German tribe near the *Tenchtheri*, originally in Saxony.

V.

Valerius, -i ; m.: *Valerius*, a Roman *nomen*.

Vāhālis, -is ; N. sing. m.: *the Vahalis* (now *Waal*) forming the left arm of the Rhine.

Vālērīus, -i ; N. m.: *Valerius* : a Roman *praenomen*.

Vangīōnes, -um ; N. pl. m.: *the Vangiones*, a German people on the Rhine in the neighbourhood of the modern *Worms*.

Velānius, -il ; N. sing. m.: *Velanius*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Velōcasses, -ium ; N. pl. m.: *the Velocasses*, also called *Bellocasii*, a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was *Rotomagus* (now *Rouen*) on the north bank of the *Sequana* (*Seine*).

Vēnēti, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *th Veneti*, a people of Gallia Cisalpina, in the district of modern *Venetia*.

Vēnēti, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Veneti*, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the western extremity, above *Nannetes*, and the mouth of the Liger (*Loire*), and bordering on the Atlantic. They were the most powerful among the *Armoric* states, and were conspicuous for their skill in navigation. Their chief town was *Darioigum*, afterwards called *Veneti* (now *Vannes*).

Vēnētīa, -ae ; N. sing. f.: see *Veneti*.

Vēnētīcus, -a, -um ; adj.: see *Veneti*.

Vērāgri, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Veragri*, a tribe who dwelt amid the Alps. Their chief town was *Ocotodurus* (now *Martigny* or *Martinach*).

Veromandūl, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Veromandui*, a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was *Augusta Veromanduorum* (now *St. Quentin*), in the old division of France called *Veromandois*.

Vērūdoctiūs, -i; N.m.: a chief of the Helvetii, sent along with Nameius was at the head of an embassy to Caesar. Their object was to request permission to march through the Roman province.

Veromandui, -ōrum; pl. m.: a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduorum (now *St. Quentin*), in the old division of France, *Vero-mandois*.

Vertico, -ōnis; m.: a Nervian nobleman, friendly to the Romans.

Virīdovix, -icis; N. sing. m.: *Viridovix*, a chief of the Unelli.

Vocātes, -iūm; N. pl. m.: *the Vocates*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Voctio, -onis; m.: a king of Noricum: whose sister was wife of Ariovistus.

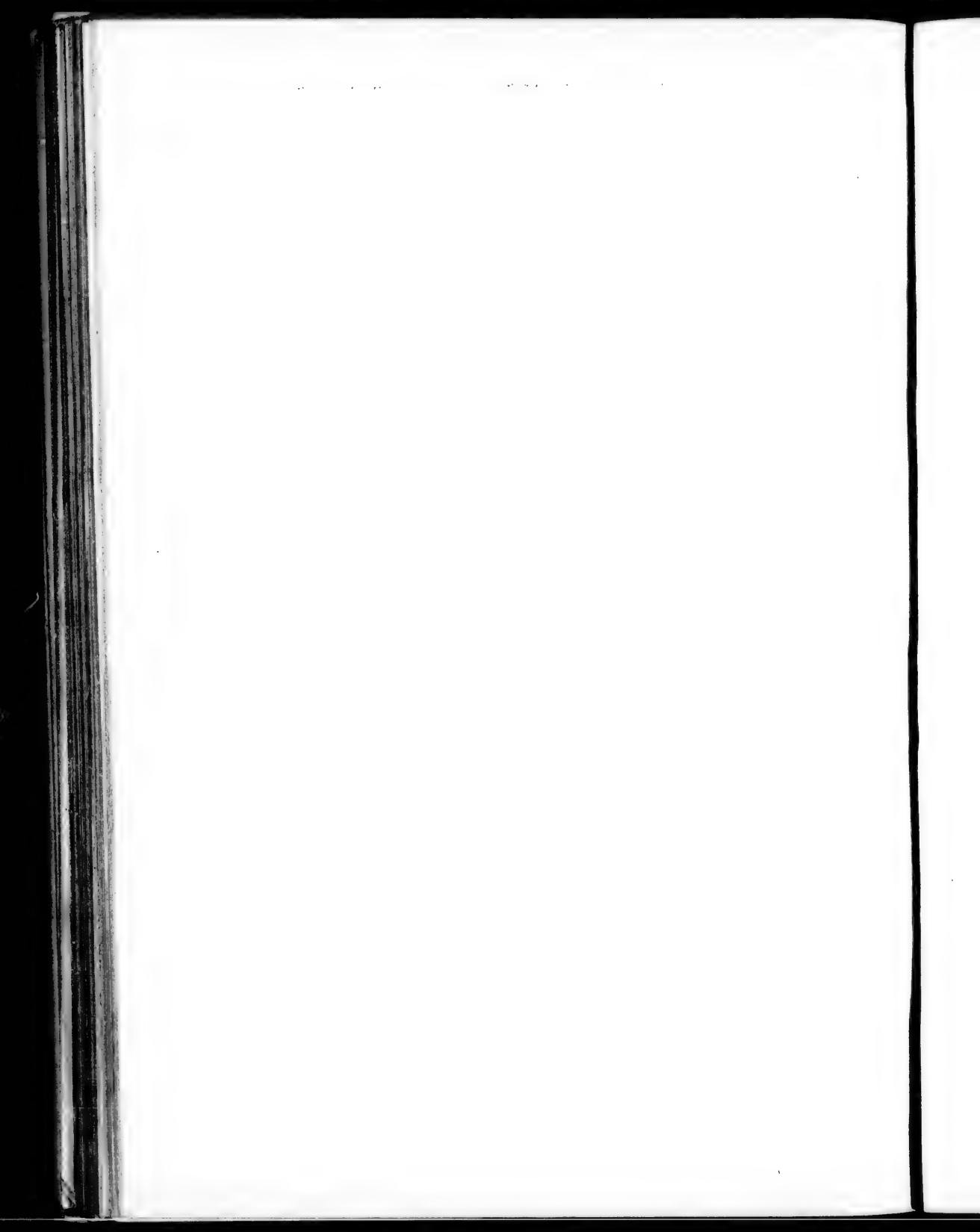
Vocontii, -ōrum: a tribe of Southern Gaul, lying to the east of the Rhine. Their chief town was Dea (now *Die*).

Völūsēnus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Volusenus*, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

Vorenus, -i; m.: a Roman centurion, rival of Palis.

Volcatius, -i; m.: *Caius Volcatius Tullus*, one of Caesar's officers left in charge of the bridge over the Rhine, while Caesar went in pursuit of the Suebi.

Vösēgus (also *Vosgēsus*), -i; N. sing. m.: *Vosegus* (now *Vosges*), a mountain chain in Gaul.



VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	active.	m.	masculine gender.
abl.	ablative.	n.	neuter, neuter gender
acc.	accusative	num.	numeral.
adv.	adverb.	opp.	opposed to in meaning
card.	cardinal.	ord.	ordinal.
cf.	confer, <i>i.e.</i> , compare.	p.	page.
comm.	common gender.	part.	participle.
comp.	comparative.	pass.	passive.
conj.	conjunction.	pl., or plur.	plural.
demonstr.	demonstrative.	prep.	preposition.
dep.	deponent.	pron.	pronoun.
dim.	diminutive.	rel.	relative.
distrib.	distributive.	sc.	scilicet (one must understand).
e. g.	exempli gratiâ (for instance).	sq.	sequens (and the following).
=	meaning the same as.	sing.	singular.
f.	feminine gender.	subst.	substantive.
freq.	frequentative.	sup.	superlative.
impers.	impersonal, -ly.	usu.	usually.
incep.	inceptive.	v.	verb.
indecl.	indeclinable.	v. or V.	vide (look at).
interrog.	interrogative.		
irreg.	irregular.		

VOCABULARY.

A.

a. d. = ante diem, a phrase used in reckoning the days of the month.

a, ab, abs, prep. w. abl., *by, from, at, etc.*; **a dextro cornu,** on the right wing; **a tergo,** in the rear; sometimes **a, ab,** is used as an adv.: **ab millibus passuum octo** = eight miles off.

ab-do, ēre, abdīdi, abditum, *to hide.*

ab-dūco, ducēre, duxi, ductum, *lead away.*

ab-ēo, Ire, Ivi or Ii, Itum, *to go away.*

ab-futurus, fut. part. of **ab-sum.**

ābicio (abj.) ēre, icci, iectum, *to cast or throw away, throw down.*

ābiēs, ētis, f., *fir.*

ab-iungo (abjungo), ēre, nxi, netum, *to separate, detach, disjoin.*

ab-ripio, ēre, ripui, reptum, *to tear away; carry off by force.* [rapio.]

abs-cido, ēre, cidi, cisum, *cut off, cut away.* [caedo.]

absens, -tis, pres. part. of **absum,** *absent.*

absimilis, e, adj., *unlike.*

ab-sisto, ēre, abstīti, *to desist, stand aloof from.*

abs-tineo, ēre, tinui, tentum *hold back; abstain from; spare.* [teneo.]

abs-trāho, ēre, traxi, tractum, *drag away; take away by force.*

absum, abesse, abfui, fut. inf., *abfore or abfuturus esse, to be away from, be absent, be distant.*

abundo, are, avi, atum, *overflow; abound in; be well supplied with.* [unda, a wave.]

ac (=atque), conj., *and, and moreover.*

accēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to come or go near, to approach; to be added.*

accelero, are, avi, atum, *make haste; quicken; hurry.*

accerso (=arcesso), ēre, Ivi, Itum, *to send for, summon.* [ad-cēdo.]

accīdo, ēre, cidi, no sup., *to happen; turn out; fall to the lot of,* [ad-cado.]

accīdo, ēre cidi, cisum, *to cut into.* [ad-caedo.]

accīpio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, *to receive; to learn.* [ad-capio.]

acclivis, e, adj., *sloping upwards; ascending.* [clivus.]

acclivitās, tātis, *an upward slope; an ascent.*

accommōdātus, a, um, pf. pass. part. of **accommodo,** *suites, adapted.*

accommōdo, are, avi, atum, *fit, adapt, adjust.*

accūrāte, adv., comp. -tius, *carefully, exactly.*

ac-curro, ēre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run to, hasten to.*

ac-cuso, are, avi, atum, *accuse, blame reproach.* [ad, causa.]

ācer, ācris, ācrē, adj., *sharp, keen, energetic, violent.*

ācerbē, adv., *sharply, bitterly, harshly.*

ācerbitās, tātis, *sharpness, bitterness, sorrow, trouble, hardship.*

ācerbus, a, um, *harsh, bitter, cruel, severe, disagreeable.*

ācerlime. V. acriter.

ācervus, i, m, *a heap, pile.*

ācies, ēi, f., a sharp point or edge ; keenness or fierceness of the eye ; line of battle, battle array. [root *ac* sharp ; "a thin line."] *ac*

acquirō, ēre, quisivī, quisitum, to gain, obtain, procure.

ācriter, adv., fiercely, sharply, comp. *acrius* : sup. *acerrime*. [*acer*.]

actuārius, a, um, adj., impelled by oars. [*ago*.]

actus, pf. part. of *ago*.

acuo, acuēre, -ui, ūtum, sharpen.

acūtus, a, um, pf. part. of *acuo*, as adj., sharp, pointed.

ad, prep. w. acc., to, towards, up to ; by, near to.

ādactus. *V. adigo*.

ād-aequo, āre, āvi, ātum, to make equal to ; to equal, rival.

ad-āmo, āre, āvi, ātum, conceive an affection for, love, covet.

ad-augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, to increase.

ad-do, ēre, didi, ditum, to add.

ad-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, to lead to, bring to, induce.

ādemptus. *V. adimo*.

ād-ēo, ire, ii, itum, to go to, approach.

ādēo, adv., to this degree, thus, thus far, so.

adeptus, pf. part. of *adipiscor*.

adēquito, are, avi, atum, ride up to ; ride towards. [*eques*.]

adfectus. *V. adficio*.

adfero. *V. afferō*.

ad-ficio. *V. afficio*.

adflictus. *V. adfligo*.

ad-fligo, fligēre, flixi, flictum, to cast or throw down.

ad-grēgo, are, avi, atum, to add to a flock ; *adgregare se*, to attach oneself. [*ad*, *grex*, *grego*.]

ad-haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, to stick to.

ad-haeresco, ēre, haesi, haesum, stick to ; adhere to.

ad-hībeo, ēre, ui, Itum, bring in, call in, invite, to have (one up) to, to summon, employ, consult. [*ad*, *habeo*.]

ad-hortor, ari, atus, to encourage, urge on.

adhuc, adv., as yet ; hitherto ; still ; up to this time.

ad-iāceo, ēre, iacui, no sup., to lie near to ; with dat.

adicio (*adjicio*), ēre, iēcī, iectum, throw to, throw upon, add. [*iacio*.]

ad-igo, ēre, ēgi, actum, to bring or drive to ; drive home. [*ad*, *ago*.]

ād-īmo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, to take away, deprive of. [*ad*, *emo*.]

ad-ipiscor, i, eptus, to gain, obtain.

aditus, ūs, m., a going to, access, approach. [*ad*, *eo*.]

adiūdico, are, avi, atum, adjudge, award, assign.

ad-iungo, ēre, nxi, nctum, to join to.

ad-iūtor, ōris, m., a helper.

ad-lūvo, are, iūvi, iūtum, to aid.

admātūro, are, avi, atum, ripen, mature ; hasten.

ad-mīnister, tri, m., an attendant, agent.

ad-mīnistro, are, avi, atum, to manage.

admirandus, a, um, gerundive of *admiror*, wonderful.

ad-mirror, ari, atus, to wonder at, to admire.

ad-mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, to admit ; commit.

ad-mōdum, adv., up to the limit, much, very.

ad-mōneo, ēre, ūi, Itum, to advise, warn.

adölescens, entis, part. of *adolesco* : as adj., *young* ; as subst., comm., *a young man, youth*.

adolesco, ére, olévi, ultum, *grow up; reach adult age*.

äd-örrior, iri, ortus, 4 (but with some 3rd conj. forms) *to attack*.

adpëto (app.), ére, ivi, or li, Itum, *to draw near, approach*.

ad-plico (app.), äre, ñi, Itum, *to put against*.

ad-porto, äre, ävi, ätum, *to convey*.

ad-pröpinquo (app.), äre, ävi, ätum, *to come or draw near to*.

adscendo. V. *ascendo*.

ad-scisco, ére, scévi, scëtum, *approve; admit, receive, adopt*.

ad-sídñus, (ass.) a, um, adj., *continual, constant*. [adsideo.]

ad-sisto, (ass.) ére, astiti, no sup., *to stand by*.

ad-süefäcio, (ass.) ére, fëci, factum, *to accustom, to habituate; in pass., to get used (to anything)*.

ad-süesco, (ass.) ére, ëvi, ëtum, *to grow used to, get accustomed to*.

adsum, -esse, -fui, *to be present, be at hand*.

ad-tingo, (att.) ére, tīgi, tactum, *to touch, border upon*.

ad-tribuo. See *attribuo*.

adulescens. v. *adolescens*.

adulescentia (or *adolescentia*), ae, f, *youth; age of youth*.

adulescentulus, i, m, dimin., *a lad, stripling*.

adventus, ùs, m., *a coming, approach*.

adversarius, i, m, *an adversary, opponent; foe*.

adversus, a, um, adj., *turned towards, facing*.

adversus, prep. w. acc., *opposite to, against*.

adverto, ére, verti, versum, *turn to; animum advertere, direct the mind to, observe, notice, perceive*.

advöco, are, avi, atum, *call to, summon*.

ad-völo, äre, ävi, ätum, *to fly to; to hasten off to*.

aedificium, i, n., *a building*. [aedes, facio.]

aedifico, äre, ävi, ätum, *to make a building, to build*. [aedes, facio.]

aeger, gra, grum, adj., *ill, sick*.

aegrë, adv., *with difficulty*.

aequäliter, adv., *evenly, regularly, uniformly*.

aequinoctium, i, n, *the equinox*. [aequus, nox.]

aequität, ätis, f., *equality, justice, evenness; animi aequitas, contentment*.

aequo, äre, ävi, ätum, *to make equal*.

aequus, a, um, adj., *equal, level, advantageous*.

aeraria, ae, *a copper mine*. [aes.]

aerarius, a, um, *belonging to, pertaining to copper or bronze*.

aereus, a, um, *made of copper or bronze*.

aes, aeris, n., *bronze; money*. **aes alienum**, *debt (other people's money)*.

aestäs, ätis, f., *summer*.

aestimätio, önis, f., *a valuation*.

aestimo, äre, ävi, ätum, *to estimate, reckon*.

aestivus, a, um, adj., *pertaining to summer; of summer*.

aestuärium, i, n, *a marshy arm of the sea*.

aestus, ùs, m., *heat; tide; current*.

aetäs, ätis, f., *age, time of life*.

aeternus, a, um, adj., *eternal, unbroken, perpetual*.

Africus ventus, *the south-west wind*.

affĕro (adf.), afferre, attŭli, allātum or adlātum, to bring forward, allege.

affĭcio (adf.), ĕre, feci, fectum, to affect, influence; to visit with, treat.

affĭgo (adf.), ĕre, fixi, fixum, fix on; attach to.

affingo (adf.), ĕre, finxi, fectum, invent, add falsely.

affinitās (adf.), ātis, f., relationship by marriage; kinship.

affirmatio (adf.), -ōnis, f., declaration; assurance, assertion.

affixus, pf., part. of **affigo**.

afflictus, v. **affigo**.

affigo, v. **adffigo**.

āger, gri, m., land, territory, domain.

agger, ĕris, m., pile, mound, rampart, mole, dike; materials for a mound.

aggredior (adg.), i, gressus sum, go to; attack.

aggrego, v. **adgrego**.

āgĭto, are, avi, atum, drive, trouble, vex; propose, consider, discuss.

agmen, ĭnis, n., an army on the march, a column; a train.

āgo, ĕre, ĕgi, actum, to do, act, drive, push forward; to treat (with any one; cf. Eng., drive a bargain).

agricultūra, ae, f., farming, husbandry. [aeger, colo.]

ālācer, cris, cre, adj., brisk, eager.

alacritās, ātis, eagerness, ardor, zeal.

ālārius, a, um, adj., on the wings, belonging to the wings of an army; hence alarii = the allies, who were placed on the wings.

albus, a, um, adj., white.

alces, is, f., the elk.

ālĭās, adv., at another time: alias. alias. at one time. at another time.

aliĕnatus, p. part. of alieno.

aliĕno, āre, āvi, ātum, to derange, deprive of reason.

ālĭĕnus, a, um, adj., that belongs to another, foreign; **aes alienum**, debt.

ālĭō, adv., elsewhere, to another place. [alius.]

āliquamdiu, adv., for a considerable time.

aliquando, adv., at some time, at length; some time.

aliquanto, adv. of degree, somewhat, considerably, rather.

āliquantum, adj. used as subs., a certain amount.

ālĭqui, āliqua, āliquod, indef. adj., some, any.

ālĭquis, āliqua, āliquid, indef. pron., subst., and adj., some one, something.

aliquot, indecl. indef. adj., some, several.

ālĭter, adv., otherwise, in a different way; **alter ac**, differently from what, otherwise than. [alius.]

ālĭus, ia, iud (gen. alius, dative, alii), other, another; **alius. alius**, one. another; **alii. alii**, some. others.

allatus, v. **affero**.

allĭcio (adl.), ĕre, lexi, lectum, to draw to, to attract.

ālō, ĕre, ālŭi, altum and ālitum, to feed, nourish, foster, promote.

alter, ĕra, ĕrum (gen. alterius, dat. alteri), adj., the other of two, one of two, the other; in plur., alteri. alteri, the one party. the other party.

alternus, a, um, adj., alternate, one after another, mutual. [alter.]

altitŭdo, ĭnis, f., height or depth.

altum, i, n., the deep, the deep sea. [altus.]

altus, a, um, adj., high, deep.

ālŭta, ae, f., tanned skin, soft leather.

ambactus, i, m., a retainer, vassal.

ambo, ambae, bo, adj., both.

āmentia, ae, f., madness, folly. [a mens.]

amentum, i. n., a strap or thong.
anfractus, ūs, m., a winding path.
 [amb, frango.]
amicē, adv., kindly, in a friendly manner.
amicitia, ae, f., friendship.
amicus, a, um, adj., friendly.
amitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, to lose.
amōr, ōris, m., love, affection.
amplē, adv., largely, liberally, abundantly.
amplifico, āre, āvi, ātum, to widen, extend, enlarge.
amplior, comp., adj., from amplus, large, full.
amplitudo, inis, f., width, size.
amplius, comp. adv., more, further.
 [amplus.]
amplus, a, um, adj., great, large.
an, conj. introducing second half of a disjunctive or double question, or ; an.. an, whether...or.
anceps, cipitis, adj., two headed ; double, two-fold ; doubtful.
ancōra, ae, f., an anchor.
angŭlus, i, m., a corner, angle, extreme point.
angustiae, ārum, f., narrowness.
angustus, comp. adv., within more narrow limits ; more scantily.
angustus, a, um, adj., narrow, contracted.
ānima, ae, f., the soul, life, breath.
ānimadverto, ēre, ti, sum, to turn the mind to, give heed to, notice, observe.
 [animus, ad, verito.]
ānimāl, ālis, n., an animal.
ānimus, i, m., mind, courage, resolution, thought.
annōtinus, a, um, adj., a year old, of last year's, last year's. [annus.]
annus, i, m., a year.
annuus, a, um, adj., annual, yearly.

anser, ēris, m., a goose.
ante, prep. w. acc. and adv., before.
anteā, adv., before.
antē-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, to go before, go ahead, take the lead.
antē-cursor, ōris, m., a forerunner ; in plur., of an army, advanced guard, scouts.
antē-fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, to prefer.
antenna or **antenna**, ae, f., a sail-yard.
antepōno, ēre, posui, positum, place before ; prefer.
antequam, conj., before ; before that.
anteverto, ēre, verti, versum, place before ; prefer.
antiquitus, adv., anciently, in former times, of old. [antiquus.]
antiquus, a, um, adj., old, ancient.
āpērio, ire, ērui, ertum, to open, unclose.
āpertē, adv., openly, manifestly.
 [apertus.]
āpertus, a, um, perf. part. of aperio : as adj., open, unprotected.
appāro, are, avi, atum, provide, prepare, equip.
appello, āre, āvi, ātum, to call upon, call upon by name, to call.
appello, ēre, appŭli, appulsum, (of ships) to bring to port.
appeto, (adp.) ere, petivi, or ii, peti-tum, aim at, desire, seek ; approach.
applico, are, plicui, plicatum or plicitum, attach ; lean against.
approbo, (adp.) are, avi, atum, approve of, assent to, favor.
appropinquo v. **ad-propinquo**.
appulsus v. **appello**, ēre.
aptus, a, um, adj., fit, suitable.
āpūd, prep. w. acc., at, in, among, with, near, at the house of.
āqua, ae, f., water.

âquatio, ōnis, f., *getting water.*

âquila, ae. f., *an eagle. The eagle, the principal standard of a Roman legion, carried on the top of a staff, originally of silver, later of gold.*

âquifer, ōri, m., *eagle bearer, the officer who carried the chief standard of a Roman legion.* ("The eagle-bearer was *aquifer*, chosen by the centurions among the hardest and bravest soldiers, and distinguished by a bearskin which covered his helmet and shoulders." Bond and Walpole.)

arbiter, tri, m., *a witness, judge, umpire.*

arbitrium, li, n., *a decision, judgment.* [arbiter, an umpire.]

arbitror, āri, ātus, *to judge, think, consider.* [arbiter.]

arbor, ōris, f., *a tree.*

arcesso, ēre, cessivi, cessitum, *send for, summon, fetch.*

ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, *to be on fire, to burn: Gallia ardet, is aflame, burning with wrath.*

arduus, a, um, adj., *steep, high, difficult.*

argentum, i, n., *silver.*

argilla, ae. f., *clay.*

aridus, a, um, adj., *dry. aridum*, subst., *dry land, the shore.*

ariēs, ariētis, m., *battering ram; also a prop, buttress, support.*

arma, ōrum, n. plur., *arms, weapons of war.*

armāmenta, orum, n. pl., *implements, fittings, tackle, rigging.*

armatura, ae. f., *armor, equipment. levis armaturae, light-armed (soldiers).*

armatus, a, um, part. armo: as adj., *armed, wearing arms.*

armo, arc, avi, atum, *to furnish with weapons, arm, equip.*

arripio, ēre, ripui, reptum, *to seize, snatch up.* [ad, rapio.]

arroganter, adv., *insolently, arrogantly, haughtily.*

arrogantia, ae. f., *insolence, arrogance, haughtiness.*

ars, tis, f., *art, handicraft, skill.*

artē, adv., *closely, tightly.* [artus.]

articulus, i, m., dim. of artus, *a joint of an animal body.*

artificium, li, n., *skilled labour, handicraft, a trade.*

artus, a, um, adj., *close, tight fitting.* [arceo, shut up.]

arx, arcis, f., *fortress, stronghold, citadel.*

ascendo, (ads.), ēre, scendi, scensum, *to climb, mount up, ascend.* [ad, scando.]

ascensus, (ads.) ūs, m., *a going up, look, ascent.*

aspectus, (ads.) ūs, m., *appearance, sight.*

asper, ēra, ērum, adj., *rough: oppug-natio, fierce, severe.*

assiduus, v. adsiduus.

assisto, v. adsisto.

assuefacio, v. adsuefacio.

assuesco, v. adsuesco.

at, conj., *but, yet.*

atque (ac) conj., *and, and also; with words meaning difference, than.*

attexo, ēre, texui, textum, *weave to; add, join.*

atingo, ēre, tigi, tactum, *to reach, touch.*

attribuo, ēre, ūi, ūtum, *to add to, assign, give.*

auctor, ōris, m., *an adviser, instigator.*

auctoritās, ātis, f., *authority; seldom translated authority.*

auctus, a, um, pf. part. of augeo, *increased; as adj., distinguished.*

audacia, ae. f., *boldness, daring.*

audacter, adv., *boldly; audacius, audacissime.* [audax.]

audax, ācis, adj., *bold, spirited, fearless*; *audacious*.

audēo, ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *to dare*.

audiens, -ntis, pres. part. of *audio*; as adj., *obedient to*.

audio, īre, īvi, ītum, *to hear, to hearken unto, obey*.

auditio, ōnis, f., *report, rumor, hearsay*.

augēo, ēre, auxi, auctum, *to enlarge, increase*.

auriga, ae, m., *chariot driver, charioteer*.

auris, is, f., *an ear*.

aut, conj., or : aut. aut, *either...or*.

autem, conj., introducing a thought, *either entirely opposed to the previous train of thought or simply different*; (1) *but*, (2) *moreover, now* (transitional).

autumnus, i, m., *autumn*. [augeo.]

auxiliaris, e, adj., *auxiliary*.

auxilior, ari, atus sum, *assist, help*.

auxilium, īl, n., *aid, help*.

avaritia, ae, f., *greed, avarice, covetousness*.

āvēho, ēre, vexi, vectum, *carry away*.

āversus, a, um, part of *averto*, *turned away; behind, in the rear*.

āverto, ēre, ti, sum, *to turn (anything) away*.

āvis, is, f., *a bird*.

āvus, i, m., *a grandfather*.

B.

baltēus, i, m., *a sword-belt*.

barbārus, i, m., *a foreigner, barbarian*. [βάρβαρος.]

bellicōsus, a, um, adj., *warlike*.

bellicus, a, um, adj., *used for war, warlike*.

bello, are, avi, atum, *wage war*.

bellum, i, n., *war*.

bēnē, adv., *well*.

bēnē-ficium, a *kindness, favor*. [bene-facio.]

bēnē-vōlentia, ae, f., *good will, friendship, kindness*. [bene, volo.]

bidūm, i, n., *a space of two days*. [bis, dies.]

biennium, i, n., *a space of two years*. [bis, annus.]

bini, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., *two at a time, two each, in groups of two*.

bipedālis, e, adj., *two feet long, wide, thick, etc.*

bipertito, adv., *in two divisions*.

bis, num. adv., *twice*.

bōnitās, ātis, f., *goodness, excellence*.

bōnus, a, um, adj., *good*; as subst., *bona*, orum, n. plur., *wealth, goods, property*.

bōnum, i, n., *profit, good, advantage*.

bōs, bōvis, comm., *an ox, a cow*.

brachium, i, n., *an arm*.

brēvis, e, adj., *short, brief*.

brēvitās, ātis, f., *shortness, smallness, smallness of stature*.

brēviter, adv., *briefly, shortly*.

brūma, ae, f., *winter; the winter solstice*. [brevis.]

C.

C. = Caius.

cacūmen, īnis, n., *a point, peak, summit*.

cadāver, eris, n., *a corpse, dead body*.

cādo, ēre, cecīdi, cāsum, *to fall; to fall* (i.e. be killed) *in battle*.

caedes, is, f., *a cutting down, slaughter*. [caedo.]

caelestis, e, adj., *belonging to the sky, heavenly*; as subst., *a deity*.

caerimonia, ae, f., *a religious ceremony or rite*.

caerūlēus, a, um, adj., *blue*.

cālāmītās, ātis, f., *misshap, disaster*.
callidus, a, um, adj., *crafty, cunning, expert, skilful*.

cālō, ōnis, m., *camp-follower*.

campester, tris, tre, adj., *on level ground, flat, level*.

campus, i, m., *a plain*.

cāno, canēre, cēcini, cantum, *sing, sound a musical instrument*.

cāper, pri, m., *a he-goat, goat*.

cāpillus, i, m., *hair, lock of hair*.

cāpio, ēre, cēpi, captum, *to take, make (in the nautical sense of reach)*.

caprēa, ae, f., *a wild she-goat*.

captivus, a, um, adj., *taken prisoner*: as subst., **captivus**, i, m., *a prisoner of war, captive*. [**capio**.]

captus, p. part. of **capio**; **capta**, orum, n, pl. subst., *plunder*.

captus, ūs, m., *capacity, comprehension, notion, idea*. [**capio**.]

cāpūt, itis, n., *the head*.

cārēo, ēre, ūi, itum, *to be without*; *gods. abl.*

carīna, ae, f., *the keel of a ship*.

cāro, carnis, f., *flesh*.

carpo, ēre, carpsi, carptum, *pluck*; *censure, criticise, slander, revile*.

carrus, ūs, m., *a cart, waggon*.

cārus, a, um, adj., *dear, valued*.

cāsa, ae, f., *a hut*.

cāsēus, i, m., *cheese*.

cassis, idis, f., *a helmet*.

castellum, i, n., *a fort, redoubt*. [*dimin. of castrum*.]

castigo, are, avi, atum, *punish, reprove, censure*.

castrum, i, n., *a fort*; more usual in plur., **castra**, ōrum, n., *a camp*.

cāsus, ūs, m., *accident, chance, event*. [*cado*.]

cātēna, ae, f., *a chain*.

causa, ae, f., *a reason*, **causā**, abl. sing. with *ger.*, *for the sake of, on account of*.

cauté, adv., *cautiously*. [*caveo*.]

cautēs, is, f., *a jagged rock, crag, cliff*.

cautus, pf. part. pass. of *caveo*.

cāveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, *to take care; be on one's guard*.

cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum (of troops), *to retire, fall back*.

cēlērītās, ātis, f., *quickness, speed, swiftness*. [*cēler*.]

celeriter, adv., *quickly*.

cēlo, are, avi, atum, *conceal, keep in the dark, hide*.

censēo, ēre, censui, censum, *to be of opinion, to think*.

census, ūs, m., *a census, count*. [*censeo*.]

centēni, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., *a hundred each*.

centum, *a hundred*.

centūriō, ōnis, m., *a captain of a hundred men, a centurion*.

cerno, ēre, crēvi, crētum, *to distinguish by the senses, to see, perceive*.

certāmen, inis, n., *a contest, rivalry*.

cērtē, adv., *certainly, surely*: **certius** (cognoscere) *more exactly, more in detail*.

certus, a, um, adj., *assured, fixed, settled*: (aliquem) **certiorem facere**, *to inform, let anyone know*; in pass., **certior fieri**, *to be informed*.

cervus, i, m., *a stag, deer*.

cespēs, itis, m., *a cut sod or turf*.

cētērus, a, um, adj., *the rest*; usually in plur., *the rest, the others*.

cibāria, ōrum, n. plur., *provisions*.

cībus, i, m., *food*.

cingo, ēre, xi, ctum, *to surround, encompass*.

cippus, i, m., a *stake, post, palisade*.

circā, adv., *round about, around*.

circīnus, i, m., a *pair of compasses*.

circīter, prep. gov. acc. and adv., *about*; mostly of numbers or time.

circueo, v., *circumeo*.

circuitus, part. V. *circumeo*.

circūitus, ūs, m., a *going round, compass*. [circum, eo].

circum, prep. w. acc. and adv., *around, about*.

circum-cido, ěre, cidi, cīsum, to *cut around, cut*.

circumcīsus, a, um, pf. part. of **circumcido**, *cut off, inaccessible, steep*.

circum-clūdo, ěre, si, sum, to *shut in all around, to surround*.

circum-do, dāre, dedi, dātum, to *surround, inclose*; *place round*.

circū-ĕo, ire, ii, and iui, circuitum, to *go round, visit*.

circum-fundo, ěre, fūdi, fūsum, to *pour around*; with se, to *crowd around, gather around*.

circumicio, icĕre, icĕci, iectum, *throw around, place around*.

circumiectus, pl. part. of **circumicio**, *surrounding*.

circum-mitto, ěre, misi, missum, to *send around*.

circum-mūnio, ire, iui, itum, *surround with walls, fortify round about*.

circummunitio, ōnis, f., a *fortifying round about*; an *investment of a town by siege*.

circumplector, plecti, plexus, *embrace, surround, encompass*.

circum-sisto, ěre, stēti, to *stand around, surround*.

circumspicio, ěre, exi, ectum, to *look around*.

circumsto, stare, steti, *stand around*.

circumvallo, are, avi, atum, *surround with a rampart, blockade*.

circumvēhor, vēhi, vectus, *ride or sail around*.

circum-vēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, to *come round* (esp. in a hostile way), to *surround, entrap*.

circumventus, a, um, p. part. *circumvenio*.

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of*.

cītatus, a, um, *hurried, moved or spurred on quickly*. [pl. part. of cito].

cītērior, adj., formed from *citra*; *on the nearer side, nearer*.

cītissimē, superl. of adv. *cito*, *most quickly*.

citrā, prep. w. acc., *on this side of*.

citro, adv. *hither*.

civis, is, c., a *citizen*.

civītās, ātis, f., *citizenship*; a *state* (i.e. the body of citizens). [civis.]

clam, adv. *secretly* [celo.]

clāmīto, are, avi, atum, freq., to *keep calling out, to cry aloud*. [clamo.]

clāmor, ōris, m., a *shout, shouting*.

clandestīnus, a, um, adj., *secret, hidden*.

clārus, a, um, adj., *clear*; *vox, loud, distinct, clear*.

classis, is, f., a *fleet*.

claudio, ěre, clausi, clausum, *shut, close*; *claudere agmen, bring up the rear*.

clāvus, i, m., a *nail, spike*.

clémentia, ae, f., *kindness, mercy, clemency*.

cliens, tis, m., a *dependant*; of nations, *vassals*.

clientēla, ae, f., *the condition of being dependent, vassalage*.

clivus, i, m., a *slope, hill* [clino, to lean.]

coācervo, are, avi, atum, *heap up, collect*.

coactus, ūs, m., a *forcing, compulsion*.

coagmento, are, avi, atum, *fasten together, connect.*

coarto, are, avi, atum, *to press, or squeeze together* [arto, make tight.]

coēgi, v. cogo.

co-ēmo, ēmere, ēmi, emptum, *buy up, purchase.*

cō-ēo, ire, ivi or īi, itum, *to come together, meet, assemble.*

coelestis, e, adj., *heavenly; celestial*; as subst., **coelestes**, ium, pl., *the gods.*

coepi, isse, v. defect., *to begin.*

coerceo, ēre, ercui, ercitur, *to confine, restrain, check.*

cōgitatio, ōnis, f., *a thinking, deliberation, reflection.*

cōgito, are, avi, atum, *to consider, ponder, reflect upon.*

cognatio, ōnis, f., *kindred.*

cognitus, a, um, p. part. cognosco.

cognosco, ēre, gnōvi, gnitum, *to discover, learn, take cognizance of*; in perf. tenses, *know.*

cōgo, ēre, cōēgi, cōactum, *to bring together, collect*; *compel.* [co-ago.]

cōhors, tis, f., *a cohort*; $\frac{1}{16}$ of a legion.

cohortatio, ōnis, f., *encouraging, encouragement.*

cōhortor, ari, atus, *to animate, encourage, exhort.*

co-iērim, v. co-eo.

collatus, part. of confero.

col-laudo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to praise highly.*

collectus, a, um, part. colligo.

colligo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, *to get together, collect*; *to get, acquire*; se colligere, *recover one's self, rally.* [con, lego.]

collis, is, m., *a hill.*

col-lōco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to station.*

col-lōquium, il. n., *a conference.*

col-lōquor, i., locūtus, *to confer*; *hold a conference.*

cōlo, ēre, cōlāi, cultum, *to cultivate*; *to worship, honor.*

cōlōnia, ae, f., *a colony, a body of emigrants, colonists.* [colonus, colo.]

cōlor, ōris, m., *colour.*

comburo, ēre, ussi, ustum, *burn up, consume.*

cōmēs, Itis, m., *a companion.*

comitium, i, n., *the place in the Roman Forum where the elections were held*; hence *the assembly, the elections.*

cōmitor, ari, atus sum, *to accompany.*

commeatus, ūs, m., *journey, voyage, convoy*; *provisions, supplies.* [cum, meo.]

com-mēmōro, are, avi, atum, *to call to mind, recount, relate.*

commendo, are, avi, atum, *commit or entrust to for protection.*

commentarius, i, m., *memoir, commentary.*

commeo, -meare, -meavi, -meatum, *to go to and fro, visit, resort to.*

commilito, ōnis, *a fellow soldier, comrade.*

com-mīnus, adv., *hand to hand.* [con, manus.]

commisūra, ae. f., *a joint, juncture.*

com-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, *to send or bring together*; pugnam or proelium, *to join battle*; *to do, commit* (esp. any bad or unworthy action).

commōdē, adv., -ius, -issime, *conveniently, advantageously, suitably.*

com-mōdus, a, um, adj., *suitable*; subst. **commodum**, i, n., *advantage, profit.*

commonefacio, facere, fēci, factum, *remind, impress upon.*

com-mōror, ari, atus, *to delay, stay.*

commōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *agitate, disturb, alarm, excite, influence.*

commūnīco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make common, share (with anyone), to consult.* [communis.]

com-mūnīo, īre, īvi or īi, ītum, *to fortify strongly, intrench.*

com-mūnis, e, adj., *common, general.*

commūtātīo, ōnis, f., *change, alteration.*

com-mūto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to change wholly, to exchange, replace.*

1. **compāro**, (comparo), are, avi, atum, *prepare, get together, secure, collect* [com, paro.]

2. **compāro**, are, avi, atum, *compare* [compar, like.]

compello, ēre, pūli, pulsum, *drive together, collect; force, compel.*

compendium, i, n., *a saving, gain, profit.*

com-pērio, īre, pēri, pertum, *to find out for certain, learn, ascertain.*

compertus, part. of comperio, *known, certain.*

complector, i, plexus sum, *embrace, surround, include.*

com-plēo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *to fill full, fill up.*

complures, a or ia, *several.*

com-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to carry together, collect.*

com-prēhendo, ēre, di, sum, *to catch or seize hold of.*

com-prōbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to confirm, establish, make good.*

cōnātum, i, n., *an attempt.*

cōnātus, ūs, m., *an attempt.*

cōnātus, a, um, pf. part. of cōnor.

concedo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *yield, grant.*

concerto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to contend.*

concessus, ūs, m., *permission, leave.*

con-cido, ēre, cidi, *to fall together, to fall down.*

concido, ēre, cidi, eisum, *cut up, cut to pieces, cut into sections* [caedo.]

concilio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to reconcile.*

concilium, li, n., *an assembly, meeting, council.*

concito, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to rouse up, stir up, excite.* [con, cieo.]

con-clāmo, are, avi, atum, *to call or cry out together, to shout.*

concludo, ēre, clūsi, clūsum, *shut up, enclose, confine* [claudio.]

concrepo, āre, ui, itum, *rattle, crash.*

con-curro, ēre, curri, cursum, *to run together, flock.*

con-curso, āre, freq., *to run to and fro, rush about.*

concursus, ūs, m., *a running or flocking together, a concourse, collision.*

condemno, are, avi, atum, *condemn, sentence* [damus.]

condicio, ōnis, f., *a condition (of a bargain), terms; condition (= state, circumstances.)*

condōno, are, avi, atum, *give up, forgive, excuse, pardon.*

con-dūco, ēre, xi, etum, *to lead or bring together; to hire.*

confectus, v. conficio.

con-fercio, īre, no, perf., fertum, *to cram, stuff or press close together.* [farcio.]

con-fertus, a, um, part. confercio; adj., *dense, close-packed, crowded.*

con-fēro, -ferre, contūli, collātum, *to bring or gather together.*

con-festim, adv., *forthwith.*

con-ficio, ēre, feci, fectum, *to finish, accomplish, perform; to wear out (with wounds), exhaust.*

con fido, ēre, fisus sum, *to believe, trust, rely on.*

configo, figere, fixi, fixum, *fasten together, join.*

confinis, e, adj., *bordering on, adjoining*.

con-finium, ii, n., *limit, border, (of lands); district*.

confio, fieri, irreg. pass. of **conficio**, =regular form **conficior**, vii., 58.

confirmatio, ōnis, f., *assurance, assertion, encouragement*.

con-firmo, are, avi, atum, *to make firm, encourage*; 2. *to assert, protest or pledge one's self to (a thing.)*

confusus, pf. part. of **confido**, *relying on, trusting to*.

con-fitēor, ēri, fessus, *to acknowledge, confess*.

confixus, part. of **configo**.

con-flāgro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to burn, be consumed*.

con-flictātus, a, um, part. **conflicto**, *harassed, distressed*.

conflicto, are, avi, atum, *dash against or together, struggle with*—pass. *be harassed*.

con-fligo, ēre, flixi, flictum, *to clash with, dash together, engage with*.

confluens, entis, m., *meeting of two streams; confluence*.

confuo, ēre, fluxi, no supine, *flow together; flock together*.

confugio, ēre, fugi, *to flee for refuge*.

confundo, ere, fūdi, fūsum, *pour together, mix, blend, unite*.

congero, ēre, gessi, gestum, *bear, bring or carry together, collect, heap or pile up*.

con-grēdiōr, i, gressus sum, *to meet, to engage in fight*: **congrēdi cum**, *to make common cause with*.

congressus, a, um, part. of **con-gredior**.

congressus, ūs, m., *a coming together, encounter, engagement*.

con-icio, ēre, iēci, iectum, *to cast, fling, hurl*.

coniectūra, ae, f., *a conjecture, inference*.

con-iunctim adv., *jointly, in common*.

con-iungo, ēre, nxi, ctum, *to join, unite*.

coniunx, coniūgis, c., *a husband or wife, spouse* [iungo.]

con-iūrātiō, ōnis, f., *a conspiracy*. [con-iuro.]

coniūro, are, avi, atum, *take oath together, league together, conspire*.

con-laudo, v. **col-laudo**.

con-lōco, v. **col-loco**.

con-lōquium, v. **col-loquium**.

con-lōquor, v. **col-loquor**.

cōnor, ari, atus, *to attempt, try*.

con-paro, v. **comparo**.

con-pello, v. **compello**.

con-plūres, v. **complures**.

conquiesco, ēre, quievi, quietum, *rest, repose*.

con-quiō, ēre, quisivi, quisitum, *to search out, seek after*. [con-quaero.]

consanguineus, a, um, adj., *of the same blood*; as subst., m., *relative, kinsman*.

con scendo, ēre, ndi, nsum, *to climb, mount, go on board*.

con-scientia, ae, f., *consciousness*.

conscisco, ēre, scivi, scitum, *decree, appoint—sibi mortem consciscere, commit suicide*.

consciūs, a, um, adj., *conscious, accessory to*.

con-scribo, ēre, psi, ptum, *to write; to enlist, enrol*.

consecratus, a, um, part. **consecro**.

con-secro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make sacred, consecrate*.

con-sector, āri, ātus sum, *to chase, pursue*.

con-sēdi, pf. of **consido**.

consensio, ōnis, f., *agreement, unanimity.*

consensus, ūs, m., *consent, assent, united opinion.*

con-sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, to *agree, make common cause.*

con-séquor, scēqui, secūtus, to *follow up, follow; obtain, attain, acquire.*

conservo, are, avi, atum, *save, spare, maintain.*

con-sido, ēre, scēdi, sessum, to *take a seat, sit down; pitch a camp.*

consilium, li, n., *plan, counsel; council of war.*

con-similis, e, adj., *very like.*

con-sisto, ēre, stiti, stitum, to *place one's self, stand; 2. to consist in or of.*

consobrinus, i, *born of a mother's sister; cousin [soror.]*

con-sōlor, āri, ātus sum, to *cheer, comfort.*

conspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*

con-spicio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, to *behold, descry, observe.*

conspicor, āri, ātus, to *get sight of, see, perceive.*

conspiro, are, avi, atum, *agree, conspire [spiro, breathe].*

constanter, adv., *steadily, uniformly, resolutely.*

constantia, ae, f., *firmness; constancy, resolution.*

con-stat, stāre, impers. v., *it is agreed, well known, it is clear.*

consterno, are, avi, atum, *alarm, terrify.*

consterno, ēre, stravi, stratum, *strew over; cover.*

con-stipo, āre, āvi, ātum, to *crowd or press closely together.*

con-stitūo, ēre, ūi, ūtum, to *draw up, arrange; to appoint; to decide, settle, determine; to resolve.*

consto, stāre, stiti, stātum, *stand*

still, remain; consist in, depend on; cost. See constat.

constratus. See **consterno**.

consuesco, ēre, suēvi, suētum, to *grow accustomed; in perf tenses, to be accustomed, to be wont.*

consuētūdo, inis, f., *custom, usage.* [consuesco]

consuētus. See **consuesco**.

consul, ūlis, m., *consul*. Two consuls were chosen annually as the chief magistrates of Rome.

consulātus, ūs, n., *the consulship, office of consul,*

consūlo, ēre, lūi, ltum, to *take counsel; with dat., to have regard to, consult the interests of.*

consulto, adv., *intentionally.* [consulo.]

consulto, are, avi, atum, to *consult.*

consultum, i, n., *a resolution, decree.*

con-sūmo, ēre, sumpsi, sumptum, to *take up, use up, consume, waste, spend.*

consumptus. V. **consumo**.

con-surgo, ēre, surrexi, surrectum, to *arise, rise up.*

con-tābūlo, āre, āvi, ātum, to *line with planks.*

contāgio, ōnis, f., *a touching, contact, contamination.*

contāmino, are, avi, atum, *taint, pollute.*

con-temno, ēre, tempsi, temptum, to *despise, hold cheap.*

contemptio, ōnis, f., *contempt, scorn.*

contemptus, ūs, m., *contempt, scorn.*

con-tendo, ēre, di, tum, to *contend (as rivals); to fight; strive, make an effort.*

contentio, ōnis, f., *contest, rivalry.*

contestor, ari, atus sum, *call to witness, supplicate, appeal to.*

contexo, ēre, texui, textum, *weave, bind together, join.*

contīnens, entis, f., *the mainland*; also adj., *unbroken, continuous*.

continenter, adv., *constantly, incessantly*.

con-tīnēo, ēre, ūi, tentum, *to keep, keep in, restrain*; (of space) *to contain* [con, teneo.]

con-tingo, ēre, tīgi, tactum, *to touch, reach*.

continuatio, ōnis, f., *continuation, succession*.

continuo, adv., *forthwith, immediately*.

contīnūus, a, um, adj., *unbroken, continuous*.

contio, ōnis, f., *an assembly*; *a speech, harangue*.

contionor, ari, atus sum, *address, harangue*.

contra, prep. w. acc. and adv., *against*; *in opposition, in reply*.

con-trāho, ēre, xi, ctum, *to draw together, draw in, lessen*.

contrarius, a, um, *opposite, contrary*.

contrōversia, ae, f., *contention, dispute*.

contūmēlia, ae, f., *affront, insult*; *buffeting, rough usage*; c. verborum, *insulting language, scoffs, taunts*.

convalesco, ēre, valui, no sup., *to get well, recover strength*.

convallis, is, f., *a valley enclosed on all sides*.

convēho, vehēre, vxi, vectum, *bring together, collect, convey*.

con-vēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come together, assemble, muster*.

conventus, ūs, m., *an assembly*; *a court of justice*; plur., *the assizes*; (of soldiers) *parade*.

con-vertō, ēre, ti, sum, *to turn, direct*; *face about*.

convinco, ēre, vici, victum, *conquer utterly*; *convict, prove*.

convōco, are, avi, atum, *call together, summon*.

cō-ōrior, Iri, ortus, *to arise*.

cōpia, ae, f., *abundance, a sufficient supply*; in plur., *forces*.

cōpiōsus, a, um, *well supplied, wealthy, rich*.

cōpula, ae, f., *band*; *grappling iron*.

cor, cordis, n., *the heart*.

cōram, adv. and prep. w. abl., *in the presence of*; *face to face*.

corium, i. n., *thick skin, hide*.

cornu, ūs, n., *a horn*.

corōna, ae, f., *crown*; *circle*.

corpus, ōris, n., *a body*.

corripio, ēre, ripui, reptum, *seize violently*; *carry off*.

corrumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, *break to pieces*; *spoil, destroy, ruin*.

cortex, Icis, m. and f., *bark of a tree*.

cōrus ventus, m., *the north-west wind*.

cōtidianus, a, um, adj., *daily*.

cōtidie, adv., *daily*.

crassitudo, inis, f., *thickness*.

crātis, is, f., *wicker-work, hurdle*.

crēber, bra, um, adj., *frequent*.

crēbro, adv., *frequently, often*.

crēdo, ēre, didi, ditum, *to believe*.

crēmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to burn*.

creo, are, avi, atum, *create, make*; *choose, elect, appoint*.

cresco, ēre, crēvi, crētum, *grow, increase*; *become great or powerful*.

crimen, inis, n., *charge, accusation*; less commonly, *fault, crime*.

crūciātus, ūs, m., *torture*. [crucio, crux.]

crudēlis, ē, adj., *cruel*.

crudēlitas, ātis, f., *cruelty*.

crudēliter, adv., *cruelly*.

crūs, ūris, n., *a leg*.

cūbile, is, n., *a place of rest, couch, lair.* [cubo.]

culpa, ae, f., *fault.*

cultus, ūs, m., *way of living, civilization.* [colo.]

cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*

cum, (quum), conj., *when; since; although.*

cunctatio, ōnis, f., *delay, hesitation, tardiness.*

cunctor, ari, atus sum, *delay, hesitate.*

cunctus, a, um, adj., *all together, all.* [co-iunctus.]

cūneātim, adv., *in the form of a wedge.*

cūneus, i, m, *a wedge; a wedge-formation, military term.*

cuniculus, i, m., *literally, rabbit; burrow; in military sense, a mine.*

cūpide, ius, issime, adv., *eagerly.*

cūpiditās, ātis, f., *covetousness, desire, greed.* [cupidus, cupio.]

cūpidus, a, um, adj., *eager for, desirous of.* [cupio.]

cūpio, ēre, ivi or li, itum, *to wish; WITH DAT., to be well inclined to, =faveo.*

cūr, adv., *why.*

cūra, ae, f., *care, attention, anxiety, trouble.*

cūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to care for; w. acc. of gerundive, to cause or order anything to be done.*

curro, ēre, cucurri, cursum, *run.*

currus, ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, ūs, m., *speed; course.* [curro.]

custōdia, ae, f., *a guard, watch.*

custōdio, ire, ivi, itum, *guard, defend.*

custōs, ōdis, c., *a guard, keeper, watch.*

D.

D. = **Decimus**, a proper name.

damnātus, a, um, part. damno, *condemned; as subst., damnati, orum, m., convicts, criminals.*

damno, are, avi, atum, *condemn, sentence.*

damnum, i, n., *hurt, injury, loss.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, down from; about, concerning.*

dēbēo, ēre, ūi, itum, *to owe.*

dē-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to go away, depart.*

dēcem, num. adj., *ten.*

deceptus. See decipio.

dē-cerno, ēre, crēvi, crētum, *to decide, settle.*

dēcerto, are, avi, atum, *fight, engage in battle.*

dēcessus, ūs, m., *retreat, withdrawal.*

dēcido, ēre, cidi, no supine, *fall down.*

dēcimus, a, um, ord. num, adj., *tenth.*

dēcipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, *deceive.*

dēclāro, are, avi, atum, *make clear, declare, announce.*

dēclivis, e, adj., *sloping, descending.*

dēclivitās, ātis, f., *declivity, descent.*

dēcrētum, i, n. See decerno.

decūmānus, in the phrase *decumāna porta*, *the rear or main entrance of a Roman camp*, placed farthest from the enemy, opposite to the *porta praetoria*, and named from the fact that the 10th cohort encamped near it.

dēcūrio, ōnis, m., *a decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of ten men.*

dēcurre, ēre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run down, hasten, move off.*

dēdēcus, ōris, n., *disgrace.*

dēditicius, a, um, *one who has surrendered.*

deditio, ōnis, f., a surrender.
dē-do, -dere, -didi, -ditum, to deliver or give up, to devote.
dē-dūco, ēre, duxi, ductum, to lead away, withdraw (troops); (of ships), to bring down, launch.
dēductus, V. deduco.
dēfatigātio, ōnis, f., weariness, fatigue, exhaustion.
dēfatigātus, part. of defatigo, wearied out, exhausted.
dēfatigo, are, avi, atum, tire out, exhaust, fatigue.
dēfectio, ōnis, f., rebellion, revolt. [deficio.]
dē-fendo, ēre, di, sum, to repel, ward off.
defensio, ōnis, f., defence.
dēfensor, ōris, m., a defender.
dē-fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, to announce, report; to bear down, carry down, bring.
defessus, a, um, pf. part. of defetiscor, wearied, worn out.
dē-ficio, ēre, fēci, fectum, to revolt; to fail, be wanting.
dē-figo, ēre, xi, xum, to fasten or fix down or in.
dēfinio, i re, ivi, itum, set bounds to, limit, define, fix, assign.
dēfluo, ēre, fluxi, fluxum, flow down, flow away.
dēfōre, fut. inf. of desum, = defuturum esse.
dēformis, ē, adj., ill-shaped, ugly.
dē-fūgio, ēre, fūgi, to flee from, avoid, shun.
dē-icio, ēre, icēci, iectum, to cast or throw down; to disappoint.
dēlectus, a, um. See de-icio.
dēlectus, ūs, m., descent, slope, declivity. [iacio.]
dēinceps, adv., one after the other, in succession, in turn. [deinde, capio].

dēinde, adv., thereafter, afterwards, then, next. [de, inde].
dē-lātus. See deferō.
dēlecto, are, avi, atum, delight, please; in pass. take pleasure in.
dēlectus, a, um. See deligo.
dēlectus, ūs, selection; levy (of soldiers). [deligo.]
dēlēo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, to destroy.
dēlibero, are, avi, atum, weigh (mentally), deliberate, ponder, consult. [libra, a balance].
dēlibro, are, avi, atum, strip off the bark, peel. [liber, bark.]
dēlictum, i, n., offence, fault, crime. [fr. pf. part. of delinquo.]
dē-ligo, āre, avi, atum, to bind up, bind fast. [ligo, "to bind."]
dē-ligo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, to choose [lego, "choose."]
dēlītesco, ēre, litui, no supine, hide, conceal one's self, lie in wait. [lateo, lie hid].
dēmentia, ae, f., madness, folly. [demens, de, mens].
demessus. See dēmēto.
dēmēto, ēre, messui, messum, cut down, reap, mow.
dē-migro, āre, āvi, ātum, to retire from, remove, emigrate.
dēmīnūo minūere, minūi, minūtum, lessen, take away from, impair. [minus.]
dē-mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, to send or let down; se, to descend.
dēmo, ēre, dempsi, demptum, to take off, remove.
dē-monstro, āre, āvi, ātum, to show, point out.
dēmōror, ari, atus sum, delay, linger; hinder.
dēmum, adv., at last.
dēnēgo, are, avi, atum, deny, refuse.
dēni, ae, a, dis. adj., ten apiece, ten.

dénique, adv., *at last, finally; in short, in a word.*

dē-nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to declare.*

dē-pello, ēre, pelli, pulsum, *to drive away, remove.*

dē-perdo, ēre, didi, ditum, *to lose, lose utterly.*

dē-pereo, ire, perii, *to perish utterly.*

dē-pōno, ēre, pōnii, pōsitum, *to lay down.*

dēpōpulator, āri, ātus sum, *to ravage, lay waste.*

dēporto, are, avi, atum, *carry off, remove.*

dēposco, ēre, poposci, no supine, *demand, require.*

dēpositus. See **dēpōno**.

dēprecātor, ōris, m., *an intercessor.*

dēprēcor, āri, ātus sum, *to avert by entreaty, beg off.*

dē-prēhendo, ēre, di, sum, *to catch, seize upon.*

dēprimo, ēre, pressi, pressum, *press down, sink.* [premo.]

dēpugno, are, avi, atum, *fight (to an issue).*

dēpulsus. See **depello**.

dērivo, are, avi, atum, *draw off (of a stream); turn aside.* [rivus.]

dē-rōgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take away withdraw.*

dēscendo, ēre, scendi, scensum, *to descend.*

dēsēco, are, secui, sectum, *cut off.* [seco, cut.]

dē-sēro, ēre, rūi, rtum, *to abandon, forsake.*

dēsertor, ōris, m., *a runaway, deserter.* [desero.]

dēsertus, a, um, part. desero, *deserted; adj., (of places) solitary, waste.*

dēsidēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wish.*

dēsidiā, ae, f., *idleness, sloth.*

dēsigno, are, avi, atum, *mark out, point out, describe, appoint; mean, signify.*

desilio, ire, silii, saltum, *to leap down.*

desisto, ēre, stiti, stitum, *to cease from.*

dēspectus, a, um. See **despicio**.

dēspectus, ūs, m., *a looking down, a view from a height; pl. heights.*

dēspērātio, ōnis, f., *despair.*

dē-spēro, are, avi, atum, *to despair.*

despicio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, *to despise, look down upon.*

dēspōlio, iare, iavi, iatum, *despoil, rob, plunder.*

dēstino, are, avi, atum, *make fast, bind; determine, appoint.*

desituo, ūere, ui, ūtum, *put aside, desert, abandon.* [statuo].

destrictus. See **destringo**.

destringo, ēre, strinxī, strictum, *strip off, unsheath, draw (a sword).*

dē-sum, esse, fūi, *to be wanting, fail.*

dēsūper, adv., *from above.*

dētērior, ius, compar. adj., *inferior, worse; superl. deterrimus.*

dē-terrēo, ēre, terrūi, territum, *to frighten thoroughly, deter.*

dētērritus. See **deterreo**.

detestor, āri, ātus sum, *to curse, call down curses upon.*

dētīneo, ēre, ui, tentum, *keep back, delay, detain, stop.*

dētractus. See **detraho**.

detrāho, ēre, xi, ctum, *to withdraw from.*

dētrecto, are, avi, atum, *avoid, decline, escape.* [tracto, handle].

dētrimentōsus, a, um, *injurious, hurtful.*

dētrimentum, i, n., *damage, loss.* ["a rubbing off," de, tero.]

détrũdo, ěre, trũsi, trũsum, *thrust off, remove.*

dĕturbo, are, avi, atum, *cast down, dislodge, drive away.*

de-ũro, ěre, ũssi, ũstum, *burn up, consume.*

dĕus, i, m., *a deity, a god.*

dĕ-vĕho, ěre, xi, erum, *to carry down, convey.*

dĕvĕnio, ire, vĕni, ventum, *come from; depart to, arrive at.*

dĕvexus, a, um, adj., *sloping, steep.*

dĕvinco, ěre, vici, victum, *conquer completely.*

dĕvũco, ěre, avi, atum, *to call down.*

devũtus, pf. part. of devoveo; as adj., *attached to, faithful to*; as subst., *devoted follower.*

dĕ-vũvĕo, ěre, vũvi, vũtum, *to vow, devote.*

dexter, dextra, dextrum, adj., *on the right-hand side, right.*

dextra, ae, f. (scil., manus) *the right hand.*

dicio, ōnis, f., *sway, dominion, authority, lordship.*

dico, ěre, xi, ctum, *to say: dicere diem, to fix, name a day.*

dico, are, avi, atum, *devote, give up.*

dictio, ōnis, f., *speaking, pleading.* [dico.]

dictum, i, n, *word, command.*

didũco ěre, duxi, ductum, *lead in different directions, divide, separate, distribute, scatter.*

dies, ěi, m. (sometimes f. in sing.), *a day.*

dif-fĕro, ferre, distũli dilatum, *to differ.*

difficĩlis, e, adj., *difficult.*

difficultās, ātis, f., *difficulty.*

difficulter, adv., *with difficulty, compar., difficilior.*

dif-fido, ěre, fĩsus sum, *to distrust, despair of.*

diffĩsus, a, um, pf. part. of diffido; as adj., *distrusting, doubtful.*

dif-fundo, ěre, fũdi, fũsum, *to spread out.*

digĩtus, i, m., *finger; as a measure, the 16th part of a Roman foot, an inch, finger's breadth. — digitus pollex, the thumb.*

dignitās, ātis, f., *dignity.*

dignus, a, um, adj., *worthy, fitting.*

di-lũdico, are, avi, atum, *to decide, determine.*

dilectus, a, um, part. diligo.

diligenter, -ius, -issime, adv., *attentively, carefully.*

diligentia, ae, f., *carefulness.*

diligo, ěre, lexi, lectum, *to esteem highly, to love.*

dimensus. See dimetior.

dimĕtior, iri, mensus sum, *measure off.*

dimicatio, ōnis, f., *fierce combat, hot engagement.*

dimico, ěre, avi, atum, *to fight.*

dimidius, a, um, adj., *half; dimidium, n., the half.* [medius.]

di-mitto, ěre. misi, missum, *to send out in various directions; to forego, let slip, relinquish, abandon.*

directe, adv., *straight, directly.*

directus, a, um, part. dirigo; also adj., *straight.*

dirigo, ěre, rexi, rectum, *to form into a straight line; draw up troops in battle array.*

dirĩmo, ěre, ěmi, emptum, *take apart, break up; break off, put an end to.* [dis, emo.]

diripio, ěre, ripui, reptum, *tear asunder, plunder, ravage, pillage.* [dis, rapio.]

dis- or **di-** adverbial prefix, *apart, asunder.*

dis-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to go away, depart.*

disceptātor, ōris, m., *arbitrator, umpire, judge.*

discerno, ēre, crēvi, crētum, *discriminate between.*

discessus, ūs, m., *departure.*

disciplina, ae, f., *training, discipline.*

disclūdo, ēre, clūsi, clūsum, *keep apart, hold apart, separate, divide.* [claudio.]

disco, discere, didici, *to learn by study.*

discrimen, inis, n., *risk, danger; difference.*

discutio, ēre, cussi, cussum, *shatter, disperse, clear away.* [quatio.]

disicio, ēre, ieci, iectum, *drive asunder, scatter, rout.* [iacio.]

dispār, pāris, adj., *unequal.*

dispāro, are, avi, atum, *divide, part, separate.*

di-spergo, ēre, si, sum, *to scatter about, disperse.*

dispersus, a, um, p. part. used as adj., *scattered* [dispergo.]

dis-pōno, ēre, pōsi, pōsitum, *to set in different places, to station.*

dispūtatio, ōnis, f., *arguing, disputing; an argument.*

dis-pūto, are, avi, atum, *to investigate, treat of, discuss.*

dissensio, ōnis, f., *disagreement, discord.*

dis-sentio, ire, si, sum, *to differ in opinion, disagree.*

dissēro, ēre, sēvi, situm, *plant here and there, place at intervals.* [sero, plant.]

dissimūlo, are, avi, atum, *disguise, conceal.* [similis.]

dissipātus, a, um, part. dissipō.

dis-sīpo, āre, avi, atum, *to disperse, scatter.*

dissuādeo, ēre, suāsi, suāsum, *dis-suade, advise against, oppose.*

distineo, ēre, ui, tentum, *keep apart; hold off; separate.*

disto, stare, no pf. or supine, *stand apart, be separated.*

distrahō, ēre, traxi, tractum, *drag asunder, pull apart, divide.*

dis-trībūo, ēre, ūi, ūtum, *to divide, distribute.*

ditissimus, see dives.

dīū, -tius, -tissime, adv., *for a long time, long.*

diurnus, a, um, adj., *of the day, by day.* [dies.]

diūtīnus, a, um, adj., *enduring for a long time, lasting, long.*

diutissimē, see diu.

diuturnitās, ātis, f., *length of time, long duration.*

diuturnus, a, um, adj., *long in time.* [diu.]

diversus, a, um, part. diverto; adj., *in different directions, apart, remote.*

divēs, vītis, comp. divitior or ditior, superl. divitissimus or ditissimus, *rich, wealthy.*

dī-vīdo, ēre, vīsi, vīsum, *to divide, separate.*

divīnus, a, um, *divine.*

dō, dāre, dēdi, dātum, *to give.*

dōcēo, ēre, ūi, ctum, *to teach, instruct, tell.*

dōcumentum, i, n., *proof, warning.*

dōlēo, ēre, ūi, itum, *to grieve for, take to heart.*

dōlor, ōris, m., *pain* (of body or mind), *grief, chagrin.*

dōlus, i, m., *craft, fraud, deceit, stratagem.*

dōmesticus, a, um, adj., *domestic; bellum domesticum, intestine, civil war.*

dōmicilium, i, n., *dwelling.*

dōmīnor, ari, atus sum, *be master, have dominion.*

dōmīnus, ūs, m., *master, lord, owner.*

dōmus, ūs, f., *house, home*; **domi**, loc. case, *at home.*

dōno, are, avi, atum, *give, present.*

dōnum, i, n., *a gift.*

dōs, ōtis, f., *dowry, marriage portion.*

dūbitātio, ōnis, f., *doubt, hesitation.*

dūbīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to doubt, hesitate.*

dūbīus, a, um, adj., *doubtful.*

dūbīum, i, n., as subst., *uncertainty, risk.*

dūcenti, ae, a, adj., plur., *two hundred.*

dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, *to lead*; *to hold, consider.*

ductus, ūs, m., *leadership, the lead, command.*

dum, conj., *while, until.*

dūō, ae, o, card. num. adj., *two.*

duōdēcim, card. num. adj., *twelve.*

duō-decim, a, um, ord. num., *twelfth.*

duōdēni, ae, a, dis. adj., *twelve a piece, twelve.*

duplīco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to double.*

dūrītīa, ae, f., *hardness, hardness of life.*

dūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harden, make hardy.*

dūrus, a, um, adj., *hard.*

dux, dūcis, m. and f., *a leader.*

E

ē or **ex**, (**e** before consonants, **ex** before vowels) prep. with abl., *out of, from the inside of*; *in accordance with*; *in consequence of*; *following after, on*; **ex unā parte**, *on one side*; **ex usu**, *of advantage.*

ēā, (sc. parte or viā), adv., *on that side, by that way, there.* [is.]

ēdico, ēre, dixi, dictum, *make known, command.*

ē-disco, ēre, didici, *to learn off by heart.*

ēditus, a, um, *elevated, high*, [ēdo].

ē-do, dēre, didi, dītum, *put forth, exhibit*; *elevate.*

ē-dōceo, ēre, docui, doctum, *teach, instruct, inform, tell.*

ē-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, *to lead forth, draw out.*

effarcio, īre, farsī, fartum, *stop up, stuff, fill.*

effēmīno, are, avi, atum, *make womanish, weaken, enervate.*

ef-fēro, ferre, extūli, elātum, *to bring out*; *to set forth, publish*; in pass., *to be puffed up, elated, inspirited.*

ef-ficio, ēre, fēcī, fectum, *to bring to pass, accomplish, effect, produce.*

effodio, ēre, fōdi, fōssum, *dig out, tear out.*

effossus. See **effodio**.

ef-fūgio, ēre, fūgi, *to escape.*

ēgens, ntis, pres. part. of **egeō**, *wanting, needy.*

ēgēo, ēre, ūi, *to lack, need, be in want of.*

ēgestās, ātis, f., *neediness, extreme poverty.*

ēgo, mei, personal pron., *I*; pl. nōs, nostrum.

ēgōmet, pl. nosmet, emphatic form of **ego**.

ē-grēdior, i, gressus, *to come or go out.*

ēgrēgiē, adv., *remarkably, splendidly.*

ē-grēgius, a, um, adj., *distinguished, remarkable.* [e, grege, i.e. *out of the (common) herd.*]

ēgressus, a, um, part. **egredior**.

ēgressus, ūs, m., *going out, the way out, departure.*

ēicio, ēre, iēcī, iectum, *to turn out, cast out, cast up.*

ēius-mōdi, of that kind, of such a kind. [is, modus]

ē-lābor, ī, elapsus, to slip away, escape.

ēlapsus, a, um, part. elabor.

ēlātus. See **effero**.

ēlectus. See **eligo**.

ēlēphantus, ī, and **ēlēphas**, antis, m., an elephant.

ēlicio, ēre, licī and **lexi**, licitum, to entice or draw out.

ēligo, ēre, lōgi, lectum, choose out, select, pick.

ēmigro, are, avi, atum, move out, emigrate.

ēmīneo, ēre, minui, no supine, project, stand forth.

ēmīnus, at a distance, from afar, [e, manus.]

ēmitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, send forth, let go, hurl, let slip.

ēmo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, buy, purchase.

ēnascor, nasci, natus sum, grow out, shoot out (of branches.)

ēnim, conj. for.

ēnitor, ī, nixus or nixus sum, struggle, strive.

ē-nuntio, āre, avi, atum, to disclose, tell.

ēō, adv., 1. an old dat. or acc., thither, to that place; 2. abl. of **is** used as adv. in phrase: **eo quod**, for the reason that; 3. abl. used as adv. of degree, the, by that much.

eo, īre, ivi or ii, itum, to go.

eōdem, adv., to the same place.

ephippium, ī, saddle-cloth.

ephippiatus, a, um, adj. furnished with saddle-cloths, saddle-using.

ēpistōla, ae, f., a letter.

ēpūlae, īrum, f. (irreg. plur. of **epulum**), banquets, feasts.

ēquēs, Itis, m., a horseman, rider; a (Roman) knight; in plur., equites, cav-

alry; used also of the "Knights" of Gaul. [equus.]

ēquester, tris, tre, adj., belonging to cavalry, cavalry.

ēquiltātus, ūs, m., cavalry.

ēquus, ī, m., a horse.

ērectus, a, um, (pf. part. of **erigo**) adj., high.

ēreptus, v. eripio.

ergā, prep. with acc., towards.

ērgo, adv., therefore, then.

ē-rigo, ēre, rexi, rectum, to raise or set up.

ēripio, ēre, ripui, reptum, to snatch away; with se, to escape, flee.

erro, āre, āvi, ātum, to stray, wander; to wander from the truth, be mistaken.

ērumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, burst forth, sally, make a sortie.

ēruptio, ōnis, f., a breaking out; (of troops) a sally.

essēda, ae, f., war-chariot.

essēdārius, ī, m., charioteer, chariot warrior.

ēt, conj., and, also; et. et, both. and.

ētiam, conj., also, even, furthermore.

etiāmsi, conj., even if, although.

etsi, conj., although.

ēvādo, ēre, vāsi, vāsum, escape.

ēvello, ēre, velli, vulsum, pull out.

ēvēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, turn out, happen.

ēventus, ūs, m., issue, consequence, result. [e-venio.]

ēvōcatus, a, um, pf. part. of **ēvoco**; as subst. a veteran serving voluntarily after his time was out.

ē-vōco, āre, āvi, ātum, to call out, summon.

ēvōlo, āre, āvi, ātum, fly or rush forth.

ex, prep., w. abl., see **e**.

exactus, see **exigo**.

exagito, are, avi, atum, *drive out, annoy, harass.*

exāmīno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to weigh in the balance, examine, test.* [examen, the tongue of the balance.]

exānimātus, a, um, part. exanimo.

ex-ānimo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to kill.* [ex, anima, breath].

ex-ardesco, ēre, arsi, arsum, *to burst into a blaze, take fire.*

ex-audio, ire, ivi, itum, *to hear distinctly.*

ex-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to go forth or out; to go out from; leave.*

ex-cello, ēre, cellūi, celsum, *to be eminent, excel.*

ex-celsus, a, um, pf. part. of excello; adj., *tall, lofty.*

excepto, are, avi, atum, *catch up, pick up with the hands* [excipio.]

exceptus, a, um, pf. part. of excipio.

ex-cīpio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, *to catch, take, capture; take in turn, relieve* (of sentinels, etc.).

excīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to raise, erect, build; to arouse, incite.*

ex-clūdo, ēre, clūsi, clūsum, *to shut out, cut off.*

ex-cōgīto, are, avi, atum, *to think out, contrive.*

ex-crūcio, are, avi, atum, *to torture.*

excūbītor ōris, m., *sentinel* ["one who lies out," ex, cubo.]

excūbo, are, cūbui, cūbitum, *lie out, keep watch.*

exculco, are, avi, atum, *tread down*, [ex, calx, the heel.]

excursio, ōnis, f., *a running out, a sally, sortie.*

excūsatio, ōnis, f., *excuse-making, apology, defence.*

excūso, are, avi, atum, *excuse, defend.*

exemplum, i, n., *example; warning, punishment.*

ex-ēo, ire, ii, itum, *to go forth or out.*

ex-ercēo, ēre, ēi, itum, *to employ, keep busy; drill, exercise* (troops).

exercitatio, ōnis, f., *exercise, training, practice.* [exerceo].

exercitatus, a, um, *skilled, trained.*

exercitus, ūs, m., *an army.* [exerceo].

ex-haurio, ire, hauri, haustum, *to draw out, take out.*

exigo, ēre, ēgi, actum, *to bring to an end, complete.*

exiguē, adv., *barely, hardly*

exiguitās, ātis, *smallness, shortness, small number, scantiness.*

exigūus, a, um, adj., *small.*

exīmius, a, um, *eminent, distinguished, excellent.*

existimatio, ōnis, f., *judgment, opinion.*

existimo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to consider, judge, think.*

existo, (**ex-sisto**), ēre, stiti, stitum, *to come forth, arise.*

exitus, ūs, m., *an issue, end, result.* [exeo].

expecto, v. **exspecto**.

expēdio, ire, ivi, or ii, itum, *set free, disengage, get ready.*

expēditio, ōnis, f., *a foray, incursion, expedition.*

expēditus, part., from expedio, *unimpeded, ready, easy, lightly equipped.*

ex-pello, ēre, pūli, pulsum, *to drive out, banish, expel.*

ex-pērior, iri, pertus, *to try.*

ex-pio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to atone for, make good.*

expleo, ēre, plēvi, plētum, *fill up, complete.*

explōrator, ōris, m., *a scout, spy.*

explorātus, pf. part. of **exploro**, ascertained for certain; **pro explorato**, as a fact.

ex-plōro, āre, āvi, ātum, to search out, reconnoitre.

ex-pōno, ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, to land (troops), to set on shore (nautical).

exporto, are, avi, atum, carry out.

exposco, ēre, poposci, no supine, demand.

expōsitus. See **expono**.

exprīmo, ēre, pressi, pressum, press out; extort; raise.

expugnatio, ōnis, f., attack, assault.

expugno, are, avi, atum, take by storm, capture, attack.

expulsus, a, um, part. **expello**.

exquiro, ēre, quisivi, quisitum, seek out, enquire, ask for.

exquisitus. See **exquiro**.

exsēquor, sēqui, secutus or sequutus sum, follow out; maintain, enforce.

exsēro, ēre, serui, sertum, thrust out, make bare.

exsertus. See **exsero**.

exsisto, ēre, stiti, stitum, 1. make to come forth, 2. come forth, arise, spring up, ensue; appear; project.

exspecto, āre, āvi, ātum, to wait, wait for, await.

exspoliō, iare, iavi, iatum, deprive, strip, rob.

exstinguo, uere, stinxi, stinctum, quench, extinguish, destroy utterly.

exsto (exto), āre, no perf. or sup., to stand forth; stand out, project above.

exstructus, a, um, part. **extruo**.

ex-strūo, ēre, xi, ctum, to build up, raise, rear.

exter or **externus**, a, um, adj.; outer, outward. Comp. **exterior**, outer; superl. **extremus**, outermost, last, extreme.

exterreo, ēre, ui, itum, frighten the roughly, terrify.

extimesco, ēre, timui, no supine, fear greatly, dread.

extorqueo, ēre, torsi, tortum, twist out, extort, force from.

extrā, prep. w. acc., beyond, outside of.

ex-trāho, ēre, traxi, tractum, to drag out, waste.

extrēmus, a, um, adj., super. of exterior, furthest, extreme; as subst., **extremum**, i, n., the end.

extrūdo, ēre, trūsi, trūsum, push out, force out.

exūl, is, m., an exile, outlaw.

ex-ūo, ēre, ūi, ūtum, to despoil; strip.

exūro, ēre, ūssi, ūstum, burn up. [ex, completely.]

F.

fāber, i, m., a smith, workman, mechanic [root FA, in facio].

fācilē, adv., easily.

fācilis, e, adj., easy. [facio].

fācīnus, ōris, n., a crime. [facio].

fācio, ēre, fēci, factum, to do, make: aliquem certiore, to inform, let one know.

factio, ōnis, f., a faction, party.

factu, abl., supine of facio.

factum, i, n., a deed, action, achievement.

factus, a, um, part. fio.

fācultās, ātis, f., means, opportunity.

fāgus, i, f., a beech-tree.

fallo, ēre, fefelli, falsum, deceive, disappoint.

falsus, a, um, part. fallo; adj., false.

falx, eis, f., a grappling hook, used in attacking fortifications.

fāma, ae, f., report, rumor, tradition; tidings. [for, fari.]

fāmēs, is, f., *hunger, famine.*

fāmīlia, ae, f., *household; servants; family*: paterfamiliae, *master of a house.*

fāmilīāris, e, adj.; usu. as subst., **fāmilīāris**, is, m., *an intimate friend.* [familia.]

fāmilīārītās, ātis, f., *intimacy, close friendship.*

fās, n., indecl., *what is right, lawful, permitted by Heaven.*

fastigātē, adv., *sloping.*

fastigatus, a, um, adj., *sloping.* [fastigo, slope off to a point.]

fastigium, i, n., *top of a roof or hill; sloping side, descent, declivity.*

fātum, i, n., *fate.*

fāveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum, *to favor.*

fax, fācis, f., *torch, firebrand.*

felicitās, ātis, f., *success.*

feliciter, adv., *fortunately, prosperously.*

fēmīna, ae, f., *a woman.*

fēmur, ōris or inis, n., *a thigh.*

fēra, ae, f., *a wild animal.*

fērax, ācis, adj., *fertile.* [fero.]

fērē, adv., *almost, nearly.*

fēro, ferre, tōli, lātum, *to bear, bring; to bear, endure; to assert, say.*

ferrāmentum, i, n., *an iron tool.*

ferraria, ae, f., *iron-mine.*

ferrarius, a, um, adj., *made of iron.*

ferrēus, a, um, adj., *made of iron.* [ferrum.]

ferrum, i, n., *iron.*

fertilis, e, adj., *fertile, fruitful.*

fertilitās, ātis, f., *fertility.*

fērus, a, um, adj., *wild*; **fēra**, ae, f., subst., *wild beast.*

fervōfactus, a, um, part., *heated, made red-hot.* [ferveo, facio].

fervēo, ēre, bñi, *to be a-glow*; **fer-ventes glandes**, *red-hot bullets.*

fibūla, ae, f., *brace.* [figo, fasten.]

fidelis, ē, adj., *faithful, trustworthy, true.*

fides, ēi, f., *faith, confidence; assurance, word of honor.*

fiducia, ae, f., *trust, confidence.*

figūra, ae, f., *form, shape.*

filia, ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. filiabus, *daughter.*

filius, ii, m., *a son.*

figo, ēre, finxi, fectum, *to form, devise, frame.*

finio, īre, ivi or ii, itum, *to end; to determine or fix the limits of; to describe the extent of.* [finis.]

finis, is, m., *a boundary, border, limit*; **fines**, plur., *territory.*

finitimus, a, um, adj., *bordering, adjoining, neighboring*; plur. subst., **finitimi**, orum, m., *neighbors.*

fio, fieri, factus, v. irreg. (pass. of facio), *to be made, to be done, become, take place.*

firmiter, adv., *steadily, firmly, strongly.*

firmitudo, inis, f., *firmness, strength.*

firmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make strong, secure.*

firmus, a, um, adj., *strong, powerful.*

fistūca, ae, f., *rammer, pile-driver.*

flāgito, are, avi, atum, *ask earnestly, importune, demand.*

flamma, ae, f., *blaze, flame.*

flecto, ēre, xi, xum, *to bend, curve.*

fleo, flere, flevi, fletum, *weep.*

fletus, ūs, m., *weeping.*

fio, flāre, flāvi, flātum, *to blow.*

flōrens, ntis, pres. part. of floreō, *blooming, flourishing, prosperous, influential.*

flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*

fluctus, ūs, m., *wave.*

flūmen, inis, n., *a river.*

fluo, ēre, fluxi, fluxum, *flow*.
fōdio, ēre, fōdi, fōssum, *dig*.
foedus, ēris, n., *a compact, treaty*.
fōre=**futurum esse**, fut. infin. of **sum**.
fōrem=**essem**. See **sum**.
fōris, adv., *out of doors, outside, abroad*. [old abl.]
forma, ae, f., *shape*.
fors, fortis, f., *chance, luck*.
forte, adv., *perchance, peradventure*.
fortis, e, adj., *brave*.
fortiter, -tius, -tissime, adv., *bravely*.
fortitudo, inis, f., *bravery, courage*.
fortuito, adv., *by chance*.
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune; in plur., possessions, property*.
fortūnātus, a, um, adj., *successful, wealthy*.
fōrum, i, n., *forum, market-place*.
fossa, ae, f., *a ditch, trench*. [fodio.]
fōvĕa, ae, f., *a pit, pitfall (for catching wild animals)*.
frango, ēre, frēgi, fractum, *break, wreck, dash in pieces (of ships); break down, wear out (of men)*.
frāter, tris, m., *a brother*.
frāternus, a, um, *of a brother, brotherly*.
fraus, fraudis, f., *deceit, deception*.
frēmītus, ūs, m., *din, noise*.
frēquens, entis, adj., *crowded, thronging, in large numbers*.
frētus, a, um, adj., *relying upon (governments abl.)*.
frigidus, a, um, adj., *cold*.
frīgus, ōris, n., *cold*.
frons, tis, f., *the forehead*.
fructuōsus, a, um, *fruitful, fertile*.
fructus, ūs, m., *produce, fruit; of money, interest*.
frūmentārius, a, um, adj., *pertain-*

ing to corn; res frumentaria, corn supply.

frūmentātio, ōnis, f., *foraging; obtaining corn*.

frūmentor, āri, ātus sum, *to forage*.

frūmentum, i, n., *corn, grain*.

fruor, frui, fructus, or fructus sum, *enjoy, gov's abl.*

frustrā, adv., *in vain, without effect*.

fūga, ae, f., *flight, rout, running away*.

fūgio, ēre, fūgi, fūgitum, *to flee*.

fūgitivus, a, um, adj., *fleeing; as subst., a runaway, deserter*.

fūgo, are, avi, atum, *put to flight, rout*.

fūmo, are, avi, atum, *smoke*.

fūmus, i, m., *smoke*.

funda, ae, f., *a sling*.

fungor, fungi, functus sum, *perform a duty, discharge; gov's abl.*

fūnis, is, m., *a rope*.

fūnebris, e, adj., *pertaining to a funeral; funeral (adj.)*.

fūnus, ēris, n., *burial, funeral rites*.

fūrōr, ōris, m., *fury, rage, madness*.

furtum, i, n., *theft*. [fur.]

fūsilis, e, adj. [fundo.] *strictly molten, fluid, liquid; at Bk. v, 43, fusilis argilla, softened clay*.

fūtūrus, a, um, *future part. of sum*.

G.

galea, ae, f., *a helmet (of leather)*.

Gallicus, a, um, adj., *Gaulish, Gallic*.

gallina, ae, f., *a hen*. [gallus.]

gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, *semi-depon., rejoice*.

gāvīsus. See **gaudeo**.

gēner, ēri, m., *a son-in-law*.

gēnerātīm, adv., *by tribes*.

gens, tis, f., *a clan, nation*.

gēnus, ċris, n., *a class, sort.*

gēro, ċre, gessi, gestum, *to carry on* :
ger. bellum, *to wage war* : res gestae,
what has happened, events, achievements.

glādīus, li, m., *a sword.*

glans, dis, f., *an acorn* ; an acorn-
shaped missile.

glēba, ae, f., *a clod (of earth.)*

glōria, ae, f., *glory, renown, praise.*

grātīa, ae, f., *favor* ; thanks, return,
requital.

grātūlātiō, ōnis, f., *rejoicing, con-*
gratulation.

grātulor, ari, atus sum, *congratulate.*

grātus, a, um., adj., *acceptable, agree-*
able, pleasing.

grāvis, e, adj., *heavy, severe.*

grāvītās, ātis, f., *weight, authority,*
gravity, importance. [gravis.]

grāviter, -ius, issime, adv., *heavily* ;
deeply, severely : **graviter ferre**, *to be*
indignant at, take amiss.

grāvo, are. avi, atum, *load heavily,*
weigh down ; passive, *feel displeasure,*
hesitate, be unwilling.

gubernātor, ōris, m., *a helmsman.*
[guberno.]

gusto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to taste, eat.*

H.

hābēo, ċre, ūi, itum, *to have* : *to*
deem, hold, consider : orationem or
contionem habēre, *to deliver a speech or*
harangue.

haesīto, are, avi, atum, *stick, stick*
fast, remain fixed [haereo.]

hāmus, i, m., *hook.*

harpāgo, ōnis, m., *grappling-hook.*

haud, adv., *not.*

hērēditās, ātis, f., *heirship, inheri-*
tance. [heres.]

hiberna, orum, n., *winter-quarters.*

hibernāculum, i, n., *winter abode.*

hic, haec, hōc, demonstr. pron., *this.*

hic, adv., *here.*

hiēmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to pass the*
winter ; *to winter.* [hiems.]

hiems, is, f., *winter.*

hinc, adv., *hence.*

hōdiē, adv., *to-day* [hoc-die.]

hōmo, inis, comm., *a human being, a*
man.

hōnestus, a, um, adj., *distinguished,*
honorable, noble. [honor.]

hōnor, ōris, m., *honor, esteem.*

honōrificus, a, um, *honor-produc-*
ing, honorable, full of honor [facis.]

hōra, ae, f., *an hour.*

horreo, ċre, horrui, no supine, *shud-*
der, shudder at, dread.

horridus, a, um, adj., *rough, un-*
couth, savage.

hortor, āri, ātus, *to exhort, urge.*

hospes, Itis, m., *a guest.*

hospitium, ii, n., *hospitality* ; at V.
27, it means, *hospitable relations.*

hostis, is, comm., *an enemy.*

hūc, adv., *to this place, hither* ; **ec-**
cedit huc, *to this is added.*

huiusmodi, of this sort.

hūmānus, a, um, adj., *refined, civil-*
ized. [homo.]

hūmerus, i, m., *shoulder.*

hūmilis, e, adj., *lowly* ; *insignificant.*
[humus.]

hūmilitās, ātis, f., *lowliness, weak-*
ness.

I.

N.B.—No distinction is made between
I and J.

iaceo, ċre, iacui, no supine, *lie down,*
lie ; **iacens**, as subst., *one fallen.*

iācio, ċre, iēcī, iactum, *to cast, hurl,*
fling, throw.

iacto, are, avi, atum, *fling, toss about* ;
discuss.

iactūra, ae, f. (*a throwing*), *expense, cost.*

iaculum, i, n., *a dart, javelin.* [iacio.]

iam, adv., *now, already.*

ibi, adv., *in that place, there.* [is.]

ictus, ūs, m., *a blow, stab, stroke* [ico.]

idcirco, adv., *for that reason.*

identidem, adv., *from time to time, repeatedly, again and again,* [idem, doubled.]

idem, eādem, idem, pron., *the same.*

idōneus, a, um, adj., *convenient, suitable, adapted.*

Idūs, uum, f. pl., *the Ides, the 13th day of the month, except in March, May, July, October, when it was the 15th.*

ignis, is, m., *fire.*

ignōbilis, e, adj., *unknown to fame, obscure.*

ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace, dishonor.*

ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be ignorant of.* [in gnarus.]

ignōsco, ēre, gnōvi, gnōtum, (*not to know*), *to pardon, overlook, forgive*

ignotus, a, um, pf. part. of **ignosco**; as adj., *unknown.*

illatus, v. inlatus.

ille, a, ud, pron. dem., *that; he, she, it.*

illic, adv., *there, in that place.*

illigatus, v. inligatus.

illigo, v. inligo.

illo, adv., *thither, to that place; to that end.*

illustris, v. inlustris.

imbēcillitās, ātis, *weakness, feebleness.*

imber, imbris, m., *rain, rainstorm.*

imitor, ari, ātus sum, *to imitate.*

immānia, e, adj., *enormous, huge.*

imminēo, ēre, no perf. or sup., *to impend, be close at hand.*

immitto, ere, misi, missum, *to send against, cast, hurl, let loose.* [inmitto.]

immōlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to offer up, sacrifice.* [in, mola.]

immortālis, e, adj., *undying, immortal.* [in, mortalis, mors.]

immūnis, ē, adj., *free from taxes; free from public duty; exempt.*

immunitās, ātis, f., *exemption or freedom from public charges and services.*

imparātus, a, um, adj., *unprepared.*

impēdimentum, i, n., *a hindrance; plur., impedimenta, orum, the baggage (train) of an army.* [impedio.]

impēdio, ire, ivi or ii, itum, *to entangle, hamper, hinder.* [in, pes.]

impēditus, a, um, part. impedio.

impello, ēre, pūli, pulsum, *to drive on, urge; impel; instigate.*

impendeo, ēre, no pf. or supine, *hang over, overhang.*

impensus, a, um, *dear* (in price). [impendo.]

impērator, ōris, m., *a commander* (in chief).

impērātum, i, n., *that which is commanded; a command, order.* [impero.]

imperfectus, a, um, adj., *unfinished, incomplete.*

impēritus, a, um, adj., *inexperienced, ignorant.*

impērium, ii, n., *a command, order; authority, control, power.*

impēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to command, order.*

impetro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to obtain a wish.*

impētus, ūs, m., *assault, attack, onset.*

impīus, a, um, adj., *without reverence for the gods, one's country, or parents; impious, wicked.* [in-pius.]

implico, are, avi, or ui, ātum or itum, *enfold, entangle, involve.* [plicō, fold.]

implōro, are, avi, atum, *to entreat, appeal to.*

impōno, ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, *place on; impose; mount.*

importo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey, import.*

importatus, V. importo.

imprimis, adv., *especially, particularly.* [in, primus.]

imprōbus, a, um, *bad, shameless.*

imprōvisum, i, n., *that which is unforeseen: usu. in abl. w. de, adverbially, de improviso suddenly, unexpectedly.* [in, pro, video.]

imprōvisus, a, um, adj., *unforeseen.*

imprūdēns, entis, adj., *unwitting, taken unawares.*

imprūdētia, ae, f., *ignorance, lack of foresight.*

impūbes, ēris, adj., *unmarried, under age.*

impugno, are, avi, atum, *fight against, attack, assail, charge.*

impulsus, a, um, part., *impello.*

impūne, adv., *without punishment.*

impūnītās, ātis, *freedom from punishment, impunity.*

īmus, superl. of *inferus*.

impulsus, ūs, m., *prompting, instigation.* [impello.]

īn, prep. w. acc., *into, against, to, towards; w. abl., in, on, upon, among, within.*

īnānis, e, adj., *empty, void.*

īncautē, adv., *carelessly.*

īncautus, a, um, adj., *heedless, off one's guard.* [caveo.]

īncēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *advance, proceed; come upon, seize upon (as of grief, etc.)*

īncendīum, īi, n., *a fire, camp-fire.*

īncendo, ēre, cendi, censum, *set on fire, burn; rouse, fire, excite.* [candeo, shine.]

īnceptus. See *incipio*.

īncertus, a, um, adj., *doubtful: iter incertum, taken at hazard or at a venture.*

īncīdo, ēre, cīdi, cāsūm, *to happen, occur.* [in, cado.]

īncido, ēre, cīdi, cīsum, *cut into, lop off.* [caedo, cut.]

īncīpio, ēre, cēpi, cēptum, *to begin.*

īncīsus. See *incido*.

īncīto, are, avi, atum, *rouse, urge, incite.*

īncōgnītus, a, um, *unknown.* [cognosco.]

īncrēpīto, are, avi, atum, *reproach, blame, chide, taunt.*

īncumbo, ēre, cūbui, cūbitum, *(to lie or lean upon), devote one's self to, attend to.*

īncursus, ūs, *an assault, attack.*

īn-cōlo, ēre, cōlūi, cultum, *to inhabit, dwell.*

īncōlūmis, e, adj., *safe, unharmed.*

īncommōdē, adv., *disastrously, unfortunately.*

īncommōdum, i, n., *disadvantage, disaster, misfortune.*

īncrēdībīlis, e, adj., *not to be believed, marvellous.* [in, credo.]

īncursio, ōnis, f., *invasion, attack.* [incurro.]

īnde, adv., *from that place, thence.*

īndīcīum, īi, n., *secret information.*

īn-dico, ēre, xi, ctum, *to appoint, proclaim.*

īndictus, perf. part. of *īndico*.

īndictus, a, um, adj., *unsaid—causā īndictā, without a hearing.* [in, not, dico.]

īndīgnē, adv., *unworthily, shamefully.*

īndīgnītās, ātis, f., *unworthiness, unbecoming conduct; disgrace, indignity, insult.*

indignor, ari, atus sum, *think unworthy, be indignant at.*

indignus, a, um, **adj.**, *unworthy.*

indiligens, ntis, **adj.**, *careless, heedless.*

indiliger, adv., *carelessly.*

indiligentia, ae, f., *carelessness.*

indūco, ēre, duxi, ductum, *lead on or into, induce, influence; cover.*

indulgeo, ēre, dulsei, dultum, *favor, indulge, be kind to.*

indūo, ūere, ūi, ūtum, *put on—se induere, to get tangled.*

industriē, adv., *industriously, diligently.*

indūtiae, arum, pl. f., *a truce, armistice.*

in-ēo, ire, ivi, or ii, Itum, *to go into, enter upon.*

inermis, e, **adj.**, *unarmed.* [in, arma.]

iners, ertis, **adj.**, *indolent, idle, unmanly.* [in, not; ars.]

infāmia, ae, f., *disgrace, dishonor.*

infans, ntis, e., *one who does not speak; an infant, child.* [in, not; fari, speak.]

infectus, a, um, **adj.**, *unaccomplished.* [facio.]

inferior, us, comp. **adj.**, *lower.* [inferus, infra.]

infēro, -ferre, intali, inlātum or illātum, *to bring on or against; bellum, to make, to wage, carry on against; vulnus, to inflict; in ignem, to throw (anything) into.*

inferus, a, um, **adj.**, *below, underneath; compar. inferior, lower; superl. infimus, or imus, lowest; lowest part of.*

infestus, a, um, **adj.**, *hostile.*

in-ficio, ēre, fēci, fectum, *to dye, stain.*

infidēlis, e, **adj.**, *unfaithful.*

infigo, ēre, fixi, fixum, *fasten in.*

infimus. See **inferus**.

infinitus, a, um, **adj.**, *endless, unlimited.* [in, finis.]

infirmiās, ātis, f., *weakness, fickleness.*

in-firmus, a, um, **adj.**, *weak.*

inflecto, ēre, flexi, flexum, *to bend.*

influo, ēre, fluxi, fluxum, *to flow into.*

infōdio, ēre, fōdi, fōssum, *bury, dig in.*

infrā, prep. w. acc., *below, under.*

ingens, entis, **adj.**, *large, vast, immense.*

ingrātus, a, um, **adj.**, *displeasing.* [in, gratus.]

ingrēdior, grēdi, gressus, *to advance, enter on.*

inicio, ēre, iēci, iectum, *throw in, infuse; lay on.* [in, iacio.]

inlectus. See **inicio**.

inimicitia, ae, f., *enmity, hostility.*

inimicus, a, um, **adj.**, *unfriendly; subst., inimicus, i, m., an enemy, foe.* [in, amicus.]

iniquitās, ātis, *unevenness; inequality; unfairness; bad character; unfavorable position.*

iniquus, a, um, **adj.**, *not level: locus, disadvantageous, unfavorable.* [in, aequus.]

initium, ii, n., *a beginning.* [in, eo.]

inītus, a, um, part. ineo.

iniungo, ēre, iunxi, iunctum, *fix, fasten upon.*

iniūria, ae, f., *injury, wrong, oppression.* [in, ius.]

in-iussu, m., (only in abl.), *without the command.*

inlātus, (ill-), a, um, part. infero.

inligātus, (ill-), a, um, part. inligo.

in-līgo, (ill-), āre, avi, atum, *to bind on, tie on.*

inlustris, (ill-), e, **adj.**, *distinguished, high (of social rank).* [in, lustro.]

innascor, nasci, nātus sum, *be born in; spring up.*

innitor, nīti, nīsus or nīxus sum, *lean on.* [nitor.]

innixus. See innitor.

in-nōcens, ntis, adj., *harmless, guiltless, innocent.*

innocentia, ae, f., *innocence, blamelessness, integrity.*

inōpia, ae, f., *want, lack, poverty.*

inōpinans, ntis, adj., *not expecting, unawares, off one's guard.*

inpētro, v. impetro.

inquit, v. defect., *says he.*

in-rumpo, (irr-), ēre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break, burst, or rush in, or into.*

insciens, entis, adj., *not knowing, ignorant.*

inscientia, ae, f., *lack of knowledge, ignorance.*

insclus, a, um, adj., *not knowing, ignorant.*

insēquor, i, quītus or cītus, *to follow up, pursue.*

insero, ēre, serui, sertum, *fasten into.* [sero, join.]

insīdiāe, ārum, f., plur., *an ambuscade, ambush.* [insideo.]

insīdior, āri, ātus sum, *to lay an ambush.*

insignē, is, n., *sign, badge, distinction.*

insignis, e, adj., *noted, remarkable.*

insilio, ire, silui, sultum, *leap upon.* [salio.]

insimūlo, are, avi, atum, *charge, accuse.*

insinuo, are, avi, atum, *worm one's way into, thrust one's self into, penetrate.*

insisto, ēre, stiti no sup., with in. and acc., *to devote oneself to; press forward.*

insolēnter, adv., *haughtily, insolently.*

inspecto, are, avi, atum, *look on.*

instābilis, e, adj., *unsteady.* [in, not; sto.]

instans, pres. part. of insto, *pressing, imminent.*

instar, n, indecl., *image of; like un-* to, gov's gen.

instigo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to urge on, incite.*

institūo, ēre, tūi, tūtum, *to set up, build; to fabricate, fashion, make; sermonem, to arrange, keep up.*

institūtum, i, n., *mode or manner of life, custom, habits.*

in-sto, stāre, stīti, stātum, *to press forward.*

instructus. See instruo.

instrūmentum, i, n., *furniture.* [in-struo.]

instrūo, ēre, struxi, structum, *to build, construct; to draw up in array; fit out, equip.*

insuēfactus, a, um, adj., *unaccustomed.*

insuētus, a, um, adj., *unaccustomed.*

insūla, ae, f., *an island.*

insūper, adv., *above, overhead, on top.*

intēger, gra, grum, adj., *untouched, whole, new; unimpaired, undiminished.*

intēgo, ēre, texi, tectum, *cover, cover over.*

intellēgo, ēre, exi, ectum, *to understand, perceive; to be quite aware.*

intendo, ēre, tendi, tentum, *strive.*

intentus, a, um, *attentive, eager, bent on, intent.*

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among, during.*

inter-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to come between, intervene; to interfere, occur, arise.*

inter-cipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, *to catch or seize on the way, to intercept.* [inter, capio.]

interclūdo, ēre, clūsi, clūsum, *shut off, cut off, block up, hinder.*

inter-dico, ēre, xi, ctum, *to forbid, prohibit, interdict.*

interdiu, adv., *in the day time, by day.*

interdum, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile; sometimes.*

intērēā, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

intēr-ēo, ire, fi, Itum, *to die, perish.*

inter-ficio, ēre, fēci, fectum, *to kill, slay.*

intericio, ēre, iēci, iectum, *throw between, put between; in pass. of time, elapse, intervene. [iacio.]*

intērim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime. [inter, im (old acc. of is.)]*

intērior, ōris, adj., comp. from intra, *inner, interior.*

intēritus, ūs, m., *destruction, death [intereo.]*

intermitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to put or send between; to leave off, to allow to pass or elapse, to pause, to stop.*

internicio (-necio), ōnis, f., *slaughter; utter destruction, annihilation. [inter, neco, kill.]*

interpello, are, avi, atum, *interrupt, disturb, hinder.*

inter-pōno, ēre, pōsi, pōsitum, *to put or set between: fidem, to pledge one's word.*

inter-pres, ētis, comm., *an interpreter.*

interpretor, ari, atus sum, *to explain, expound.*

interrōgo, are, avi, atum, *ask, question.*

interrumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, *break down, break up.*

interscindo, ēre, scidi, scissum, *cut down, destroy.*

inter-sum, esse, fui, *to be among, to*

take part in; also as impersonal verb, interest, to be of importance, to concern.

intervallum, i, n., *interval. [inter, vallum.]*

intervēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come up, arrive.*

interventus, ūs, *coming up; arrival on the scene, intervention.*

intexo, ēre, ui, textum, *weave in, interlace.*

intōleranter, adv., *excessively, earnestly, vehemently.*

intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*

inritus, a, um, adj., *unworn, unfatigued. [tero.]*

intro, are, avi, atum, *enter, go in.*

intrōdūco, ēre, duxi, ductum, *lead into.*

intro-ēo, ire, ivi or ii, Itum, *to go into, to enter.*

intrōitus, ūs, m., *entrance. [intro-eo.]*

intrō-mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to send or let in.*

introrsus, adv., *towards the interior; inwards. [intro, versus.]*

intrō-rumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break in, enter by force.*

intueor, tuēri, tultus sum, *look upon, gaze upon.*

intūli, v. infero.

intus, adv., *on the inside, within.*

inūsītātus, a, um, adj., *strange, unfamiliar, novel.*

inūtilis, e, adj., *useless, unserviceable, disadvantageous.*

invēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *to discover, find.*

inventor, ōris, m., *an author, discoverer.*

in-vētērasco, rascere, rāvi, incept., *to grow old, to become established or fixed.*

invictus, a, um, *unconquerable, invincible.*

invideo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *envy, be jealous of.*

invidia, ae, f., *envy.*

inviolātus, a, um, adj., *sacred, inviolable.*

invitātus, a, um, part. invito.

invito, āre, āvi, ātum, *to invite, allure.*

invitus, a, um, adj., *unwilling.*

ipse, a, um, pron. demonstr., *self; himself, herself, itself; for emphasis, very, just.*

irācundiā, ae, f., *passion, anger.*

irācundus, a, um, *passionate, prone to anger.*

irrideo, ēre, rīdi, rīsum, *laugh at, mock, ridicule.*

irridiculē, adv., *without wit; non-irridicule, wittily.*

irrumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, *break into, rush into.*

irruptio, ōnis, f., *a breaking into, attack, sortie, dash.*

is, eā, id, pron. demonstr., *that; he, she, it.*

iste, a, ud, pron., demonstr., *that of yours, that near you, that which you are interested in, &c.*

ita, adv., *in this manner, so, thus.*

itāque, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*

item, adv., *also, likewise.*

iter, itinēris, n., *journey, march; road, path, way.* [supine stem it- of eo, to go.]

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

iūba, ae, f., *mane.*

iūbéo, ēre, iussi, iussum, *to bid, command, order.*

iūdicium, ii, n., *judgment, decision, opinion.* [iudex.]

iūdico, āre, āvi, ātum, *to decide, judge.* [iudex.]

iūgum, i, n., *yoke, ridge.*

iumentum, i, n., *baggage animal, beast of burden.* [iugum.]

iunctura, ae, f., *a joining, joint, space between; span.*

iunctus. See iungo.

iungo, ēre, iunxi, iunctum, *join, unite, connect.*

iūnior. See iuvenis.

iūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to swear.*

iūs, iūris, n., *right (i. e., legal right, what one is entitled to); rightful authority.*

iūs-iurandum, iūristurandi, n., *an oath.* [ius, iuro.]

iustus, a, um, part. iubeo.

iustitia, ae, f., *justice.*

iustus, a, um, adj., *complete, regular, due.*

iūvenis, e, adj., *young; comp. iunior, superl. minimus natu.*

iūventūs, ūtis, f., *collective noun, the youth, the young persons of a community.*

iūvo, āre, iūvi, iūtum, *to help.*

iuxtā, adv., *near, next.*

K.

Kal. = **Kalendae**.

Kalendae, arum, f., pl., the Calends or Kalends, the Roman name for the first day of the month. **Kalendae Apriles**, the April Kalends, or Kalends of April, April 1st.

L.

L. = **Lucius**.

lābor, lābi, lapsus, *to slip, tumble down; hence, to slip or fall away from a thing, to be disappointed.*

lābor, ōris, m., *labor, toil.*

lābōro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to labor, to be in difficulties, to be hard pressed.*

labrum, i, n., *a lip; rim, brim.*

lac, lactis, n., *milk.*

lācesso, ēre, essivi, essitum, *to attack, provoke.*

lacrima, ae, f., a *tear*.
lacrimo, are, avi, atum, *weep*.
lācus, ūs, m., a *lake*.
laedo, ēre, laesi, laesum, *hurt, violate*.
laetatio, ōnis, f., *exultation, rejoicing*.
 [laetor.]
laetitīa, ae, f., *joyfulness, rejoicing*.
laetus, a, um, *glad, joyous, joyful*.
languidē, adv., *feebly*.
languor, ōris, m., *feebleness, weariness*. [languo.]
lāpis, idis, m., a *stone*.
lapsus, a, um, part. lābor.
laqueus, i, m., *noose*.
largior, tri, itus, *to bestow, impart, yield*. [largus.]
largiter, adv., *greatly, much*. **largiter posse**, *to have great influence*.
largitio, ōnis, f., *liberality, bribery*.
lassitudo, inis, f., *faintness, weariness, exhaustion*.
lātē, adv., *widely, broadly, extensively*, comp. **latius**, sup. **latissime**.
lātēbra, ae, f., *hiding-place, covert*.
lāteo, lātēre, lātui, no supine, *lie hid, be unnoticed*.
lātissime, sup. adv. [latus.]
lātītudo, inis, f., *breadth, width*. [lātus.]
lātius, compar. of **lātē**.
latro, ōnis, *robber, freebooter*.
latrōcinium, ii, n., *freebooting, robbery, highway-robbery*; in plur., *freebooting expeditions, forays*. [latrocinor, latro.]
lātus, eris, n., a *side*.
lātus, a, um, adj., *wide, broad*.
laudo, are, avi, atum, *praise*.
laus, laudis, f., *praise, credit*.
lāvo, are, lāvi, lavātum, lautum or lōtum, *wash*; pass. used reflexively, *bathe*.

laxo, are, avi, atum, *spread out, open out, extend*.
lēgatio, ōnis, f., *an embassy*. [lēgo, *to send with a commission, to depute*.]
lēgātus, i, m., *a lieutenant-general; an envoy, ambassador, deputy*. [lēgo.]
lēgio, ōnis, f., *a legion*. [lēgo, *to choose*.]
lēgionārius, a, um, adj., *legionary (soldier)*.
lēnis, e, adj., *gentle, slack*.
lēnītās, ātis, f., *smoothness, gentleness*.
lēniter, adv., *gently, slightly, slowly*.
lēnius, adv., comp. of **lēniter**, *more feebly*.
lēpus, ōris, m., a *hare*.
lēvis, e, adj., *light (i.e. not heavy)*; hence, *light-minded, frivolous*.
lēvītās, ātis, f., *lightness; fickleness*. [lēvis.]
lēvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to lighten, ease, relieve*.
lex, legis, f., a *law*.
libenter, adv., *freely, willingly, gladly*.
liber, era, erum, adj., *free*.
liberālītās, ātis, f., *liberality, generosity, kindness*.
liberāliter, adv., *graciously, courteously, kindly*.
libērē, adv., *freely*.
libēri, ōrum, m., plur., *children*. [liber, free.]
libēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make or set free; to free, release*. [liber.]
libertās, ātis, f., *freedom, liberty*.
librilis, e, adj., *a pound in weight*. [libra, a pound, a balance.]
licentia, ae, f., *lawlessness, presumption*.
liceor, ēri, licitus sum, *bid*.
licet, ēre, licuit, and licitum est, imper. v. *it is lawful; it is allowed, permitted*.

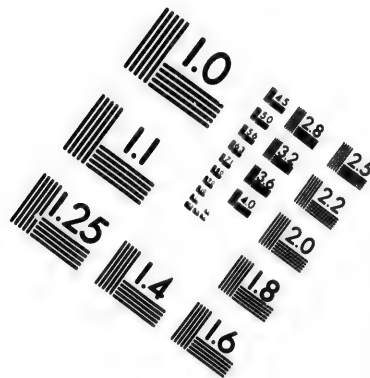
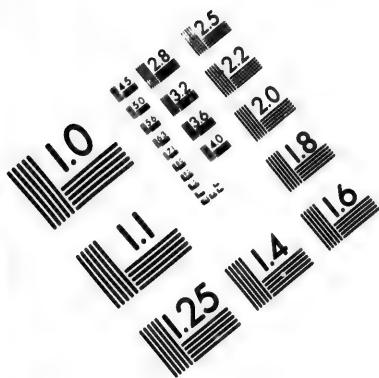
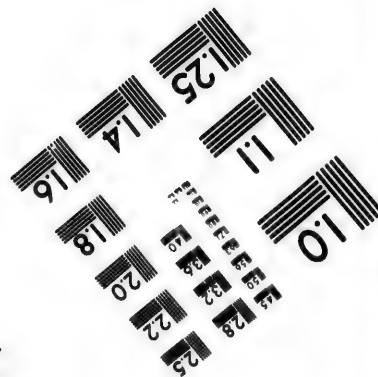
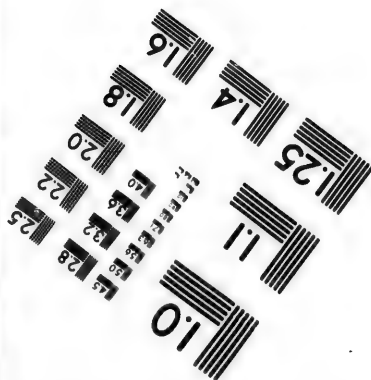
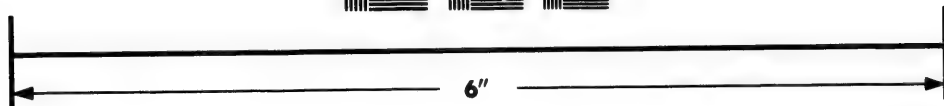
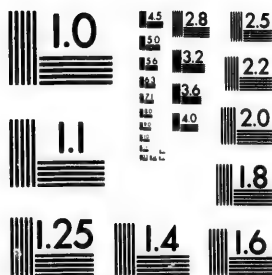


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

15 28 25
32 22
20
8

10
01

lignātiō, ōnis, f., *fellng or getting wood*. [lignum.]

lignātor, ōris, m., *a woodcutter, one sent to get wood*.

lillium, i, n., *lily*.

linea, ae, f., *line*. [linum, thread.]

lingua, ae, f., *tongue, language*.

lingula, ae, *a tongue of land, point*. [lingua.]

linter, tris, f., *boat, skiff*.

linum, i, n., *flax*.

lis, litis, f., *dispute, lawsuit*: **litem aestimare**, *to settle the matter in dispute*.

littera, ae, f., 1. singular, *a letter of the alphabet*; 2. plur., *an epistle, letter, dispatch*; *writing, literature*.

litus, ōris, n., *shore of the sea, strand, beach*.

lōcus, i, m. (pl. loca, orum, n.), *place, position, region; chance, opportunity*.

lōcūtus. See **lōquor**.

longē, -ius, -issime, adv., *far*. [longus.]

longinquus, a, um, adj., *distant*; *long, prolonged*. [longus.]

longitūdo, inis, f., *length*. [longus.]

longūrius, i, m., *a long pole*.

longus, a, um, adj., *long*.

lōquor, loqui, loquūtus or locūtus sum, *to speak, talk, say*.

lōrica, ae, f. (*a cuirass made of leather thongs*: hence) *a breastwork, mantlet, parape*. [lorum, *a thong*.]

Lūna, ae, f., *the moon, the moon-goddess*.

lux, lūcis, f., *light*: *primā luce*, *at day break*.

luxūria, ae, f., *luxury*.

M.

M. = **Marcus**.

M' = **Manius**.

māceria, ae, f., *wall, enclosure*.

māchinātiō, ōnis, f., *a contrivance, machine*. [māchīna.]

maestus, a, um, adj., *sad, sorrowful*.

māgis, adv., *more*, comp. of **magnō-pere**; superl. **maximē**.

māgistrātus, ūs, m., *a magistrate*.

magnificus, a, um, adj., *grand, splendid, magnificent*. [magnus, facio.]

magnitūdo, inis, f., *greatness; great amount*: *venti, force, violence*. [magnus.]

magnōpērē, = **magno opere**, adv., *greatly, earnestly, strongly*.

magnus, a, um, adj., (comp. **māior**, us; sup. **maximus**, a, um), *great*: *itinera*, *forced marches*.

maiestās, ātis, f., *greatness, dignity*.

māiōres, um, m. (v. **magnus**), plur. subst., *ancestors, forefathers*.

mālācia, ae, f., *a calm, stillness*.

mālēficiūm, i, n., *an evil deed, crime, mischief, hurt*.

mālo, malle, mālui, *I prefer, I would rather*.

mālus, a, um, adj., *bad, evil*.

mālus, i, m., *upright pole; mast of a ship*.

mandātum, i, n., *order, injunction, instruction*.

mando, āre, āvi, ātum, *to commit (to any one's charge), to consign, entrust, enjoin upon*; *litteris*, *to commit to writing*.

māne, adv., *in the morning, early*.

mānēo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to bide, to stay, remain*.

manipulāris, e, *belonging to a manipule or company*.

manipūlus, i, m., *a manipule, company of soldiers*. See *Introduction*.

mansūefācio, ēre, fēcī, factum, *to tame*. [mansuetus (part. of mansuesco = manus, sueco, *to accustom to be handled*), facio.]

mansuētudo, inis, f., *gentleness, mercy, kindness, compassion*.

mānus, ūs, f., *a hand; a band, body, force (of soldiers)*.

mārē, is, n., *the sea*.

maris, v. mas.

māritūmus (also **maritūmus**), a, um., adj., *maritime, of the sea*.

mās, mās, adj., *male, of the male sex*; subst., *a male* (opp. *femina*).

mātāra, ae, f., *a Gaulish javelin, pike*.

māter, tris, f., *mother*; **matres familiae**, *matrons*.

mātēria, ae, f., *timber*.

mātērior, iari, iatus sum, *procure timber*. [materia.]

mātrimōnium, i, n., *marriage, wedding*.

mātūrē, adj., *early, soon*.

mātūresco, ēre, rui, no sup., *to grow ripe*.

mātūro, are, avi, atum, *make haste, hasten*.

mātūrus, a, um, *ripe, early*.

maximē, adv., *most of all, chiefly, especially*. [maximus, magnus.]

maximus, a, um, *superl. of magnus*.

mēdeor, ēri, *to cure, heal, remedy*.

mēdiocris, e, adj., *middling, moderate*. [medius.]

mediocrīter, adv., *moderately*.

mēditerrāneus, a, um, adj., *inland*.

mēdiūs, a, um, adj., *mid, middle*.

mēlior, ius, adj., *better*. [comp. of bonus.]

membrum, i, n., *a limb, member of the body*.

mēmīni, isse, defective verb (used only in perf. tenses), *remember*.

mēmōria, ae, f., *memory, recollection*.

mendācium, i, n., *falsehood, lie*.

mens, mentis, f., *the mind*.

mensis, is, m., *a month*.

mensūra, ae, f., *measure, extent*. [metior.]

mentio, ōnis, f., *mention*.

mercātōr, ōris, m., *trader, merchant*.

mercātūra, ae, f., *commerce, trade*. [mercor, merx.]

mercēs, ēdis, f., *pay, hire, reward*.

mēreo, ēre, ui, itum, also **mereor**, ēri, Itus sum, *merit, deserve, earn; serve*.

mēridiānus, a, um, adj., *mid-day*.

meridiēs, ei, m., *mid-day; the south*.

mēritum, i, n., *good deed, service* (to any one). [mereo.]

-met, enclitic, suffix, used to emphasize pronouns, e.g., **nosmet**, *ourselves*.

mētiōr, iri, mensus sum, *measure, measure out, distribute*; used passively, *be measured out*, I, 16, 23.

mēto, ēre, messui, messum, *reap, harvest*.

mētus, ūs, m., *fear*.

meus, a, um, poss. adj., *my, mine*.

mīle or **mille**, card. num. adj. (plur., as subst., **mīlia** or **millia**), *a thousand*.

mīles, Itis, m., *a soldier*.

mīlītāris, e, adj., *belonging to a soldier or soldiering; gloria rei militaris, military renown*. [miles.]

mīlītīa, ae, f., *military service*. [miles.]

mīnīmē, superl. adv., *least*.

mīnīmus, a, um, adj., *superl. of parvus, least*.

mīnor, us, adj., *comp. of parvus, less*.

mīnūo, ēre, ūi, ūtum, *to make smaller, lessen, diminish*.

mīnus, adv., *less, the less*. [minor.]

mīror, āri, ātus, *to wonder, wonder at*.

mīrus, a, um, adj., *wonderful, strange, marvellous*.

mīser, ēra, ērum, adj., *wretched, miserable*.

mīserīcordia, ae, f., *pity, compassion, mercy.*

mīseror, ari, atus sum, *lament, deplore.*

missus, a, um, pf. part. mitto.

missus, ūs, m., *a sending.* [mitto.]

mītiſsimē, adv., superl. of mite, *very gently, very kindly.*

mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to send, throw.*

mōbīlis, e, adj., *fickle, changeable.*

mōbilitās, ātis, f., *speed, rapid movement; fickleness.* [moveo.]

mōbilit̄er, adv., *easily.*

mōderor, ari, atus sum, *check, manage, regulate.*

mōdestia, ae, f., *self-control; subordination.*

mōdō, adv., *but, merely, only.* [originally abl. of modus = a limit or measure.]

mōdus, i, m., *a measure; a way, manner.*

moenia, ium, n. pl., *walls (of a city), fortifications.*

mōlēs, is, f., *mass, mound, dam.*

mōlestē, adv., *with trouble, annoyance.*

mōlimentum, i, n., *great effort; exertion.* [mōlior.]

mōlītus. See **molo**.

mollio, ire, ivi, Itum, *soften, make easy.*

mollis, e, adj., *gentle, gently sloping.*

mollitia, ae, and **mollitiēs**, ēi, f., *softness, weakness, irresolution.*

mōlo, ēre, ui, Itum, *grind.*

mōmentum, i, n., *influence, weight, importance, account.*

mōnēo, ēre, ūi, Itum, *to advise, caution, warn, instruct.*

mons, montis, m., *a mountain.*

mōra, ae, f., *delay.*

mōrātus. See **mōror**.

morbus, i, m., *a disease.*

mōrior, mōri (or moriri) mortuus sum, *die.*

mōror, āri, ātus, *to delay, tarry, remain, stay; to hinder, hamper.* [mora.]

mors, tis, f., *death.*

mortuus, a, um, pf. part., *dead.* [morior.]

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, fashion, manner, usage.*

mōtus, ūs, m., *motion, movement: as political term, commotion, disturbance.* [moveo.]

mōvēo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move; castra movēre, to break up camp.*

mulier, ēris, f., *a woman.*

multitūdo, īnis, f., *a crowd, a large number of people; the multitude, i. e., the people in general, the masses or populace.* [multus.]

multo, are, avi, atum, *punish, fine, deprive of.*

multō, adv., *much, by far: used with comparatives.* [multus.]

multum, adv., *much, greatly, considerably.* [multus.]

multus, a, um, adj., *much; in plur., many.*

mūlus, i, m., *a mule.*

mundus, i, m., *the world, the universe.* [mundus, clean, neat.]

mūnimentum, i, n., *fortification, defence.*

mūniō, īre, īvi, or īi, Itum, *to fortify; guard.*

mūnitio, ōnis, f., *a fortifying, fortification.* [munio.]

mūnītus, a, um, part. munio, *fortified, as adj.: munitissima (castra), very strongly protected.* [moenia.]

mūnus, ēris, n., *a duty.*

mūrālis, e, adj., *belonging to a wall, mural.* [murus.]

mūrus, i, m., *a wall.*

musculus, i, a little mouse; in military sense, a shed; built strongly of wood, used in sieges as a shelter for soldiers engaged in assailing the walls of a town. [dimin. of mūs.]

mutilus, a, um, adj., maimed, wanting.

N.

nactus, a, um, part. nanciscor.

nam, conj., for.

namque, conj., for.

nanciscor, i, nactus or nactus, to obtain, get.

nascor, nasci, natus, to be born, to arise, to be produced.

nātālis, e, adj., belonging to birth, birth-. [nascor.]

nātio, ōnis, f., a race of people, a nation. [nascor.]

nātivus, a, um, adj., natural.

nātūra, ae, f., nature. [nascor.]

nātus, a, um, part. nascor.

nātus, ūs, m., (used only in abl. sing., natu), birth; **maiores natu**, elderly men.

nauta, ae, m., a sailor. [navis.]

nāvālis, e, adj., naval. [navis.]

nāvīcula, ae, f., a small vessel, ship, boat. [dimin. of navis.]

nāvigātio, ōnis, f., a voyage, sailing. [navis.]

nāvigium, i, n., vessel, craft. [navis.]

nāvīgō, āre, āvi, ātum, to sail, make a voyage. [navis.]

nāvis, is, f., a ship.

nāvo, are, avi, atum, perform busily, do with zeal; **navare operam**, act vigorously, do one's best. [= (g)navo fr. gnavus, busy.]

nē, adv. and conj., not, that not, lest; **ne . . quidem**, not even.

-nē, an enclitic particle, interrog.; **-ne . . an**, whether . . or.

necessārio, adv., perforce, of necessity. [necesse.]

necessarius, a, um, adj., urgent, necessary.

necessarius, i, m., an intimate friend, relative.

nēcesse, neut. adj., unavoidable.

necessitās, ātis, f., unavoidableness, necessity (in the sense of compulsion).

necessitudo, inis, f., friendship, intimacy.

necne, conj., or not.

nēco, āre, āvi, ātum, to kill, put to death.

necūbi, conj., in order that nowhere, lest anywhere.

nēfārius, a, um, adj., wicked. [nefas.]

nēiās, indecl. noun, n., a crime against divine law, impious deed.

neglĕgo, ĕre, exi, ctum, to disregard, make light of. [nec, lĕgo=not to gather up.]

nĕgo, āre, āvi, ātum, to say no, to deny, to refuse. [ne, aio.]

negōtior, iari, iatus sum, transact or carry on business.

nĕgōtium, ii, n., a business, matter. [nec, otium.]

nĕmo, acc. nĕmīnem, (nullus and nullo in best Lat., used for gen. and abl.), no man, no one. [ne, homo.]

nĕquāquam, adv., by no means, not at all.

nĕquĕ, or **nĕc**, conj., and not, nor; **neque . . neque**, neither . . nor.

nĕquiquam, adv., in vain, to no purpose.

nervus, i, m., a sinew.

neu or **nē-ve**, conj., and not, ne.

neūtor, tra, trum, pron., neither; gen. -ius, dat. -i. [ne, uter.]

neve. See **neu**.

nex, nĕcis, f. (violent) death.

nihil, n. indecl., *nothing*. [ne, hilum = *not a bit*.]

nihilō, abl. of nihilum, n., *by nothing*; esp. as adv., *nihilō minus, none the less*.

nīmīs, adv., *too much, excessively*.

nīmius, a, um, adj., *excessive, too great, too much*.

nī-sī, conj., *unless; except, save only*.

nītor, i, nisus and nixus, *to strive, endeavor*.

nix, nlvis, f., *snow*.

nōbīlis, e, adj., *of high birth, noble*; plur. nobiles, *the nobles* [nosco.]

nōbilitās, ātis, f., *nobility*. [nobilis].

nōcens, pres. part. of noceo, as adj., *guilty*; as subs., *an evil doer*.

nōcēo, ēre, ūi, itum, *to do hurt or harm to, injure*.

noctu, adv., *at night, by night*. [nox.]

nocturnus, a, um, adj., *belonging to night, (going on) by night*. [nox.]

nōdus, i, m., (*a knot*; hence) *a joint of an animal's body*.

nōlo, nolle, nōlūi, *to wish, not, to be unwilling*. [ne, volo.]

nōmen, Inis, n., *a name*.

nōmīnātīm, adv., *by name*. [nomen.]

nōn, adv., *not*.

nōnāginta, num. adj., *ninety*.

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet*.

nōnnīhil, adv., *somewhat, to some extent*.

non-nullus, a, um (usually plur.), adj., *some, several*.

non-numquam, adv., *sometimes (not never)*.

nōnus, a, um, num, adj., ord., *the ninth*. [=novenus, from novem.]

nōs, nostrum, plur. of ego, *we*.

nōsco, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, *to get, to know a thing; in perf. tenses, to know*.

nōsmet, emphatic form of **nos**.

nōster, stra, strum, pron. adj. poss., *our, our own*; plur. nostrī, ōrum, m., *our men* (i.e., Romans). [nos.]

nōtītia, ae, f., *knowledge*. [nōtus.]

nōtus, a, um, part., *known*. [nosco.]

nōvem, card. num. adj., *nine*.

nōvi, see nosco.

nōvitās, ātis, f., *novelty, rareness, strangeness*.

nōvus, a, um, adj., *new*; sup. nōvis-simū, a, um, *the last, latest, hindermost*.

nox, noctis, f., *night*.

noxa, ae, f., *an injurious act; a crime, guilt*. [noceo.]

nūbo, ēre, nupsi, nuptum, (*of a woman*) *to marry, veil one's self for*; gov's dat.

nūdo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make naked or bare, to uncover*; of military formation or position, *to leave uncovered or exposed to the enemy*. [nudus.]

nūdus, a, um, adj., *bare, naked, uncovered*.

nullus, a, um, adj., (gen. nullius, dat. nulli), *no, none*. [ne, ullus.]

num, interrog. particle, expecting answer "*No*."

nūmen, Inis, n., *the divine will, will or power (of the gods)*.

nūmērus, i, m., *a number; estimation, position: aliquo esse numero, to be of any account*.

nummus, i, m., *money, a piece of money, coin*.

numquam. See nunquam.

nunc, adv., *now*.

nunquam, adv., *never*. [ne, unquam.]

nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to announce*.

nuntius, li, m., *a messenger, message*.

nūper, adv., *recently, lately*.

nusquam, adv., *nowhere*.

nūtus, ūs, m., *a nod, beckoning, making signs*.

. O.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of*: *ob eam causam, for that reason, consequently, therefore.*

obaeratus, a, um, adj., *in debt*; as noun, *a debtor.*

obdūco, ēre, duxi, ductum, *lead towards, prolong.*

ob-ēo, ire, ivi or iī, itum, *to go to.*

ob-fero, (off) ob-ferre, ob-tūli, oblātum, *to present, offer.*

ob-īcio, ēre, feci, iectum, *to put in the way, hinder*; part. **obiectus**, *lying opposite, facing.*

obiectus. See **obicio**.

obitus, ūs, m., *death.* [ob, eo.]

oblātus, v. ob-fero.

obliquē, adv., *obliquely, slantingly.*

obliquus, a, um, *slanting, oblique.*

obliviscor, i, oblitus sum, *forget*; gov's gen.

obsecro, are, avi, atum, *beseech, implore, entreat.* [sacer.]

obsequētia, ae, f., *compliance.*

ob-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to pay attention to, heed, observe, keep.*

obsēs, īdis, m. or f., *a hostage.* [ob-sideo.]

obsessio, ōnis, f., *a siege; blockade.*

ob-sīdēo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *sit down at or before; to beset, besiege.* [ob, sedeo.]

obsīdio, ōnis, f., *a siege, blockade.* [ob, sideo.]

obsigno, are, avi, atum, *seal.*

obsisto, ēre, stiti, stitum, *resist, withstand.*

obstināte, adv., *stubbornly.*

obstrictus, a, um, pf. part. of **obstringo**, *bound, under obligation.*

obstringo, ēre, strinxi, strictum, *bind.*

obstrūo, ēre, xi, ctum, *to build or wall up, barricade.*

obtempero, are, avi, atum, *submit to, yield to.*

obtestor, ari, atus sum, *implore, adjure.*

ob-tīnēo, ēre, tīnui, tentum, *to have, hold, possess.* [ob, teneo.]

obvēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *meet, encounter; fall to the lot of.*

obviam, adv., *towards, in the way of*;—**obviam venire**, *to come to meet.*

occāsio, ōnis, f., *an opportunity.* [ob, cādo.]

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting; occasus solis, setting of the Sun.* [ob, cado.]

occīdens (sol), entis, m., *the west.* [occido.]

occīdo, ēre, cīdi, cāsum, *to fall; of the sun, to set.* [ob, cādo.]

occīdo, ēre, cīdi, cīsum, *to kill, slay.* [ob, caedo.]

occultatio, ōnis, f., *concealment.*

occultē, adv., *secretly.*

occulto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to conceal, hide, secrete.* [occulo.]

occultus, a, um, part. **occulo**; as adj., *concealed, hidden, secret.*

occupatio, ōnis, f., *engagement, occupation.*

occūpo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take possession of, seize upon, engage in.* [ob, capio.]

oc-curro, ēre, curri, cursum, *to run up to, come up to, meet.*

octāvus, a, um, ord. num., *eighth.*

octingenti, ae, a, num, adj., *eight hundred.* [octo centum.]

octo, card. num., adj., *eight.*

octōdēcim, indecl. card. num., *eighteen.*

octōni, ae, a, distrib. num., *eight apiece, eight at a time, in groups of eight.*

ōculus, i, m., *eye.*

ōdi, ōdisse, defec. v. (used only in pf. tenses) *hate.*

ōdium, i, n., *hatred*.

offendo, ere, fendi, fensum, *to injure*.

offensio, ōnis, f., *a hurting, wounding*.

offero, ferre, obtūli, oblātum, *present, offer, expose*.

officium, li, n., *duty, service, allegiance*.

omitto, ěre, misi, missum, *to neglect, disregard, drop, omit*.

omnino, adv., *altogether, at all*. [omnis.]

omnis, e, adj., *all, every*.

ōnerārius, a, um, adj., *pertaining to loads; of burden*. [onus.]

ōnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to load, burden, freight*. [onus.]

ōnus, ěris, n., *a load, burden, cargo, weight*.

ōpĕra, ae, f., *agency, means; aid, services*. **operam dare**, *take pains, exert one's self*. [opus.]

ōpinio, ōnis, f., *belief, expectation*. [opinor.]

ōpis, (gen.; nom. not found), *power; aid, assistance*; **opes**, plur., *resources*.

oportet, ěre, uit, impers. v., *it behooves, it is necessary*.

oppidānus, a, um, adj., *belonging to a town; as subst., a townsman*.

oppidum, i, n., *town*.

oppōno, ěre, pōsui, pōsitum, *to confront, place opposite*.

opportūnĕ, adv., *seasonably, conveniently*.

opportunitās, ātis, f., *opportunity, fitness*.

opportūnus, a, um, adj., *convenient, suitable*. [ob, portus=at or before the harbour.]

opprīmo, ěre, pressi, pressum, *to crush, overwhelm, oppress; to fall upon, take by surprise*. [ob, prĕmo.]

oppugnātio, ōnis, f., *an attack, assault*. [oppugno.]

oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to attack, assault, storm*. [ob, pugno.]

optatus, a, um, pf. part. of **opto**, as adj., *desired, agreeable*.

optimĕ, adv., *superl. of bene, best, in the best manner*.

ōpus, ěris, n., *work; work of fortification, "defences"*; **opus est**, *there is a necessity, it is needful*.

ōra, ae, f., *coast, shore*.

ōrātio, ōnis, f., *a speech, harangue*. [ora.]

ōrātor, ōris, m., *envoy, ambassador*.

orbis, is, m., *a circle, ring*.

ordo, ĩnis, m., *a line, rank of soldiers*; used by Caesar=centuria, *century, company*.

ōriens, entis, (pres. part. of **orior**), as adj., *rising*; as subst. **oriens (sol)**, *the rising sun, i.e., the east*.

ōrior, Iri, ortus, *to arise*.

ornāmentum, i, n., *decoration, adornment, honor*.

ornātus, a, um, pf. part. of **orno**, *equipped*; **ornatissimus**, *thoroughly equipped*.

orno, are, avi, ātum, *adorn, equip, furnish*.

ōro, are, avi, ātum, *to beg, beseech, entreat, implore*.

ortus, ūs, m., *a rising*.

ortus, a, um, part. of **orior**.

ōs, ōris, n., *the mouth*.

ostendo, ěre, di, sum and tum, *to show; se, make one's appearance*.

ostentatio, ōnis, f., *display, show*.

ostento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to display, show off, boast of, vaunt*. [ostendo.]

ōtium, i, n., *rest, quiet, peace*.

ōvum, i, n., *egg*.

P.

P.=Publius.

pābulatio, ōnis, f., *foraging, act of getting fodder.***pābūlātor**, ōris, m., *a forager.* [pabulor.]**pābulor**, ari, atus sum, *to forage, seek fodder.* [pabulum.]**pābulum**, i, n., *forage, fodder.***pācātus**, a, umi, (part. of paco, *to make peaceful* [pax]), as adj., *peaceful.***pāco**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to quiet, reduce to state of peace.***pactum**, i, n., *bargain, agreement.***paene**, adv., *almost, nearly.***paenitet**, ēre, uit, impers. v., *it repents.—me paenitet, I repent, I am sorry.***pāgus**, i, m, *a canton, district, village* (hence our word *pagan*).**pālam**, adv., *openly, undisguisedly.***palma**, ae, f., *the palm of the hand, the blade of an oar.***pālūs**, ūdis, f., *a marsh, morass, swamp.***palūster**, tris, tre, adj., *marshy, swampy.* [palus.]**pando**, ēre, pandi, pansum or passum, *stretch, stretch out; open, spread out.***pār**, pāris, adj., *equal.***pārātus**, a, um, pf. part. of paro; as adj., *ready, prepared, equipped.***parcē**, adv., *sparingly.* [parco.]**parco**, ēre, pēperci, parsum, *to spare, have mercy on.***pārens**, entis, m. and f., *a parent.* [pario.]**parento**, are, avi, atum, (literally, *to make a vow or offering in memory of deceased parents*), hence, *to revenge the death of any one.***pārēo**, ēre, ūi, pārītum, *to obey, submit to.***pārīo**, ēre, pēperi, partum, *to bring forth (hence), to produce, bring about, secure.***pāro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get or make ready, prepare.***pars**, partis, f., *a part, portion: in utramque partem, on both sides, either way, upon either view of the case.***partim**, adv., *in part, partly.* [pars.]**partior**, partiri, partitus sum, *divide; pf. part. used in passive sense.***partus**, a, um, part. pario.**pārum**, adv., *too little, not enough.***parvulus**, a, um, adj., dim., *little, petty, trifling; of age, little, young.* [parvus.]**parvus**, a, um, adj., *small; compar. minor, superl. minimus.***passim**, adv., *everywhere, in all directions.***passus**, ūs, m., *a step, pace; as a measure of length, about five of our feet, i.e., a double pace: mille passūs, a (Roman) mile=about 1,618 yards; V. note, B. v., chap. 2.***patēfācio**, fācere, fēci, factum, *to open; pass. patefio, fieri. factus.***patens**, entis, adj., *open.***pātēo**, ēre, ūi, *to lie open; to stretch, extend.***pāter**, tris, m., *a father.***pāterfāiliae** (or familias), m., *the master of a household, head of a family.***pātientia**, ae, f., *endurance.* [patior.]**pātior**, i, passus, *to suffer, allow.***patrius**, a, um, adj., *ancestral, of one's forefathers.***patrōnus**, i, m., *protector, patron.***patruus**, i, m., *a father's brother; uncle.***paucitās**, ātis, f., *fewness, scarcity.* [paucus.]

paucus, a, um, adj., *few, little* (very rare in sing.); as subst., **pauci**, ōrum, m., *few, a few*.

paulātim, adv., *little by little, by degrees, gradually*. [paulum.]

paulisper, adv., *for a little while* [paulum.]

paulo, adv. (with comparatives), *by a little, a little, somewhat*.

paulūlum, adv., *a little, gradually*.

paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat*.

paulus, a, um, adj., *little*.

pax, pācis, f., *peace*. [The root of the word is seen in paciscor, pango, whence our *pact, compact*.]

pecco, are, avi, atum, *do wrong*.

pectus, ōris, n., *the breast*.

pēcūnia, ae, f., *money*. [pecus, because, in early times, *wealth* was cattle.]

pecus, ōris, n., *a flock, herd, cattle*.

pedālis, e, adj., *measuring a foot, a foot thick*.

pedēs, peditis, m., *foot-soldier*.

pedester, tris, tre, adj., *on foot*.—

pedestres copiae, *infantry forces*;
pedestre proelium, *a battle on land*.

pēditātus, ūs, m., *foot-soldiers, infantry*. [pedes, pes.]

peior, compar. of **mālus**, *worse*.

pellis, is, f., *a hide, skin*.

pello, pellere, pepūli, pulsum, *drive off, defeat, conquer*.

pendo, ere, pēpendi, pensum, *to weigh out*; (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal; hence) *to pay*.

pēnēs, prep., with acc., *in the power of, in possession of*.

pēnītus, adv., *entirely, completely*.

per, prep. w. acc., *through*; showing the agent or means, *by, by means of*.

pēr-āgo, ere, ēgi, actum, *to go through with, complete, finish*.

perangustus, a, um, adj., *very narrow*.

perceptus, v. percipio.

percipio, ere, cepi, ceptum, *to take note of, receive, learn*.

percontatio, ōnis, f., *question, inquiry*. [percontor.]

percurro, eurrere, eucurri or curri, cursum, *run through; run along*.

percussus, a, um, part., percutio.

per-cūtio, ere, cussi, cussum, *to pierce or strike through*. [quatio.]

per-disco, ere, didici, *to learn thoroughly, get off by heart*.

perditus, a, um, adj., *abandoned, desperate* (pf. part. of perdo).

per-dūco, ere, xi, ctum, *to lead through; to prolong; to bring or win (any one) over to one's side; carry over*.

pērendīnus, a, um, adj., *after to-morrow*. [perendie.]

pērēo, ire, ivi or ii, itum, *to perish*.

perēquīto, are, avi, atum, *ride about or around, ride through*. [per, equus.]

pēr-exīgūus, a, um, adj., *very small*.

perfācilis, e, adj., *very easy*.

per-fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to bear or carry through; to bring; to bear, put up with, submit to*; in pass., of letters, news, etc., *to arrive, come to hand*.

per-ficio, ere, feci, factum, *to accomplish, complete, finish*. [per-facio.]

perfīdia, ae, f., *faithlessness, treachery*.

perfringo, ere, frēgi, fractum, *break through*. [frango.]

perfūga, ae, m., *deserter, fugitive*.

perfugium, i, n., *a refuge*.

pergo, ere, per-rexi, per-rectum, *go on, advance*.

periclitor, ari, atus sum, *to endanger*.

periculōsus, a, um, *full of danger, dangerous*.

pēricūlum, i, n., *danger*.

peritus, a, um, *skilled, practised, experienced in, familiar with*.

perlātus, a, um, part. *perfero*.

perlectus, a, um, part. *perlego*.

per-lēgo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, *to read through*.

perlūo, ēre, lūi, lūtum, *to wash*; in pass., *to bathe*.

permagnus, a, um, adj., *very great*.

per-mānéo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to abide, continue, remain*.

permisceo, ēre, miscui, mixtum or mistum, *mix, mingle*.

per-mitto, mittere, misi, missum, *entrust, surrender, suffer, permit*.

permixtus, pf. part. of *permisceo*.

permōtus, pf. part. of *permoveo*.

per-mōvēo, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move thoroughly*; of the mind, *to move deeply, influence, prevail on*.

permulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, *soothe, calm*.

perniciēs, ēi, f., *ruin, destruction*.

perpauci, ae, a, adj., *very few*.

perpendiculum, i, n., *plumb line*.

perpetior, peti, pessus sum, *bear, endure*. [patior.]

perpetuo, adv., *continually, constantly; always, forever*.

per-pētūus, a, um, adj., *continuing throughout, unbroken*: **in perpetuum**, *for all time, for ever*. [per-peto.]

perquiro, ēre, quisīvi, quisitum, *inquire about*. [quaero.]

per-rumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break through*.

per-scribo, ēre, psi, ptum, *to write in full, write a full account of*.

per-sēquor, sēqui, sēcūtus, *to follow up, pursue*.

persévéro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to abide steadfastly, persist*.

persolvo, ēre, solvi, solūtum, *pay in full, pay*.

perspicio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, *to look through; to see clearly, perceive*.

persto, stāre, stiti, stātum, *stand firmly, persist*.

per-suādēo, ēre, si, sum, *to persuade, prevail upon*.

perterreo, ēre, tēi, itum, *to terrify; thoroughly frighten*.

per-terrītus, a, um, part. of *perterreo*, *thoroughly frightened*.

pertinācia, ae, f., *obstinacy*. [pertinax, tenax, teneo.]

per-tīnēo, ēre, tēi, *to stretch out reach, extend; to belong to, concern, affect*. [teneo.]

perturbatio, ōnis, f., *confusion*.

per-turbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to throw into confusion; to discompose, confound*.

pervāgor, ari, atus sum, *roam about*.

per-vēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come to, arrive at*.

pēs, pēdis, m., *a foot*.

pēto, ēre, īvi, and li, itum, *to seek; ask*.

phalanx, angis, f., *solid column, phalanx*; Greek acc. plur. **phalangas**.

piētās, ātis, f., *dutiful conduct towards the gods, one's parents, country, etc.* [pius.]

pilum, i, n., *a javelin*.

pilus, i, m., usually with primus, *the division of the army occupied by the triarii*; **primi pili centurio**, *a centurion of the triarii; chief centurion*.

pinna, ae, f., *a battlement*.

piscis, is, m., *fish*.

pix, picis, f., *pitch*.

placeo, ēre, ui, itum, *please, be agreeable or welcome to*; **placet mihi**, *I am agreed, I resolve*.

plācīdē, adv., *calmly*.

plāco, are, avi, atum, *to reconcile, appease*.

plānē, adv., *clearly*.

plānities, ēi, f., *a plain; level ground*.

plānus, a, um, adj., *level, flat*.

plebs, plebis and plebes, ēi, f., *the common people*, "*the masses*" (opp. to the nobles).

plēnē, adv., *fully, completely*.

plēnus, a, um, adj., *full, complete*.

plērūmq̄ue, adv., *for the most part, mostly*.

plērusque, rāque, rumque, adj., (rare in sing.); plerique, plur., *very many, the most part, the majority*.

plumbum, i. m., *lead*; **plumbum album**, tin.

plūrimum, adv., *most, very much*; ei debere, *to be very greatly indebted to, under very great obligations to*.

plūs, plūris (in plur., plūres, plūra,) *more*, and plūrmus, a, um, *most*, adj., comp. and sup. of multus. (N. B., the sing. plus is generally a neut. subst. or an adv.)

pluteus, i. m., *a breastwork made of planks or wickerwork covered with hides, used as a protection for soldiers engaged in a siege*.

pōcūlum, i. n., *a cup, a drinking-vessel*.

poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty*.

pollex, pollicis, m., *thumb, great toe*.

pollicēor, ēri, Itus, *to promise*.

pollicītātio, ōnis, f., *a promise*.

pondus, ēris, n., *a weight*. [pendo.]

pōno, ēre, pōni, pōsitum, *to put, to place*; in pass., *to rest on, depend on anything*.

pons, ntis, m., *a bridge*.

pōpūlatio, ōnis, f., *a laying waste, ravaging*.

pōpūlor, āri, ātus, *to lay waste, ravage*. [pōpūlus.]

pōpūlus, i. m., *a people, the people*; *a district, with reference to its inhabitants*; *a community*; **Populus Romanus**, *the Roman people*, never plur.

porrectus, a, um, (pf. part. of porrigo), adj., *level*.

porrigo, ēre, rexi, rectum, *reach out, stretch forth, extend*.

porro, adv., *furthermore, now*.

porta, ae, f., *a gate*.

porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear or carry along*.

portōrium, i. n., *toi, tax, customs duties*. [porto, carry.]

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port*.

posco, ēre, poposci, no supine, *demand*.

positus, v. pono.

possessio, ōnis, f., *a possession, a property*.

possideo, sidere, sēdi, sessum, *hold, occupy, possess*.

possido, sidere, sēdi, sessum, *take possession of*.

possum, posse, pōtūi, *to be able*; I (thou, etc.) can. [potis, sum.]

post, prep. w. acc. and adv., *after*.

postēā, adv., *after this or that, afterwards*.

postēāquam, conj., *after (that)*.

postērus, a, um, adj., *coming after, following, next*. [post.]

post-pōno, ēre, pōsūi, pōsitum, *to postpone, put off*.

postquam, conj., *after*.

postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally*. [postremus, sup. of posterus.]

postridiē, adv., *on the following day, on the morrow*.

postulātum, i. n., *a demand*.

postūlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to demand*.

pōtens, tis, part of possum; as adj. *powerful*.

potentātus, ūs, m., *power, headship, supremacy*.

pōtentia, ae, f., *power*. (See note, vi. 12.) [potens.]

pōtestās, ātis, f., *power; opportunity*. [possum.]

pōtior, potiri, potitus sum, *to become master of; gain possession of; governs abl.*

pōtius, adv., *rather.*

prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with; on account of.*

prae-acutus, a, um, adj., *sharpened in front, at the end, pointed.*

praebēo, ēre, āi, itum, *to show, present.*

praecāveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, *guard against, take precautions.*

praeceps, cipitis, adj., *headlong, with great speed; steep, precipitous.* [caput.]

praecēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *go before; surpass.*

praeceptum, i, n., *instruction, command, injunction.*

praeceptus, a, um, part. praecipio.

prae-cipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, *to bid, direct, order.* [capio.]

praecipuē, adv., *especially.*

praecipūus, a, um, adj., *special.* [praecipio.]

praecūdō, ēre, cūdī, clūsum, *to hinder, stop, close.*

prae-clūsus. See praeccludo.

praeco, ōnis, m., *a crier, herald.*

prae-curro, ēre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run before, outstrip.*

praeda, ae, f., *booty.*

prae-dico, āre, āvi, ātum, *to proclaim, assert, taunt.*

praedor, ari, atus sum, *pillage, plunder, get booty.*

praedūco, ēre, duxi, ductum, *draw before, build before.*

praefectus, a, um, pf. part. of praeficio.

praefectus, i, m., *officer, captain.*

prae-fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to carry in front, to place a person or thing before another in esteem or reputation, to prefer.*

prae-ficio, ficere, feci, fectum, *to place in front or at the head of, to appoint to the command of.* [prae, facio.]

praefigo, figere, fixi, fixum, *fix or place in front.*

praemētuo, ēre, ui, no supine, *fear for, be anxious.*

prae-missus, a, um, part. of praemitto, *sent on beforehand.*

praemitto, ēre, misi, missum, *to send before, send in advance.*

praemium, ii, n., *a reward.* [prae, emo.]

prae-occupo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to occupy beforehand.*

praeopto, are, avi, atum, *choose in preference, prefer.*

prae-pāro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to prepare.*

praepōno, ponere, posui, positum, *to set anyone in command over.*

praerumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, *break off.*

praeruptus, a, um, adj., *steep, precipitous.* [rumpo.]

praescribo, ēre, scripsi, scriptum, *order, direct, command.*

praescriptum, i, n., *an order; pl., instructions.*

praesens, tis, adj., *that is before one, at hand, present.* [prae, sum.]

praesentia, ae, f., *presence, the present time: in praesentia, at hand, on the spot; sometimes regarded as n. pl.*

prae-sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, *to perceive beforehand.*

praesēpio, ire, sēpsi, sēptum, *fence in, block up.*

praesertim, adv., *especially.*

praesidium, ii, n., *protection, help.* [prae, sedeo.]

praesto, adv., *at hand: praesto esse, to present oneself.*

praesto, āre, stīti, stitum and sta-

tum, to discharge, fulfil. **pr. fidem**, keep one's word.

prae-sum, esse, fui, to be at the head of, in command of.

praeter, prep. w. acc., except.

praetērēā, adv., besides.

praetereo, ire, ivi or ii, itum, pass over, pass by.

praeteritus, part. of praetereo.

praetermitto, ēre, misi, missum, pass over, let slip, omit.

praterquam, adv., except, beyond, besides.

praetor, ōris, m., (1) general or commander; (2) praetor, a magistrate who performed the duties of judge at Rome.

praetōrius, a, um, of or belonging to the commander, pretorian; **praetoria cohors**, the general's body-guard; **praetoria porta**, the front gate of the camp, opposite the praetorium or general's tent.

prae-ūro, ēre, ussi, ustum, to burn at the point.

praeustus, a, um, part. praeuro.

praevertō, vertēre, verti, versum, outstrip, anticipate.

prāvus, a, um, adj., bad, wicked.

precem, preci, prece, defective noun; pl. preces; prayer, entreaty.

prēmo, ēre, pressi, pressum, to press, press upon, oppress.

prendo, prendēre, prendi, prensu, take, grasp.

prētium, i, n., price, value.

(**prex**) **precis**, f., defect. prayer, entreaty, supplication; curse.

pridīē, adv., on the day before.

primipilus, i, m., chief centurion. See pilus.

primo, adv., in the first place.

primum, adv., in the first place; quam primum, as soon as possible.

primus, a, um, adj. sup., the first, foremost.

princeps, ipis, adj., first, chief; as subst., comm., a chief, chieftain. [primus, capio.]

principātus, ūs, m., the first place, supremacy, chieftainship. [princeps.]

prior, us, adj., former, previous, first; **priores**, those in advance.

pristinus, a, um, adj., former, old, old-fashioned.

prīus, foll. by quam, and, as one word, **prīusquam**, adv. comp., sooner than, before, before that.

privātim, adv., as an individual, privately.

privātus, a, um, part. privo, to deprive; as adj., belonging to an individual, private.

prō, prep. w. abl., before, in front of; on account of, in consideration of.

prōbo, āre, āvi, ātum, to prove, demonstrate; to approve.

prō-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, to go forth, to advance.

prōclino, are, avi, atum, bend forward; pf. part. pass., tottering to a fall.

prōcunsul, ūlis, m., a proconsul, one assigned to the government of a province after having held the consulship.

prōcūl, adv., in the distance, from afar. [procello, to drive away.]

prō-cumbo, ēre, cūbui, cūbitum, to sink down to the ground.

prō-cūro, āre, āvi, ātum, to take care of, look after.

prō-curro, ēre, cūcurri and curri, cursum, to run forth, rush forward.

prōdēo, ire, ii, itum, to come or go forth. [pro, eo.]

prōdesse. See prōsum.

prōditio, ōnis, f., a betraying, treachery.

prōdītor, ōris, m., a betrayer, traitor. [prodo.]

prōdītus, a, um, part. prodo.

prō-do, ēre, didi, dītum, to give forth; to hand down (to memory), transmit, record.

prō-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, to lead out.

prōductus, a, um, part. produco.

proelior, āri ātus, to engage, fight a battle.

proelium, li, n., a battle, combat.

prōfectiō, ōnis, f., a going away, setting out. [proficiscor.]

prōfectus. See **prōficio**.

prōfectus. See **proficiscor**.

prōfero, ferre, tūli, lātum, bring forward or forth.

prōficio, fīcēre, fēcī, fectum, advance; effect, gain.

prōfiscor, proficisci prōfectus, to set out, start, depart.

prōfiteor, ēri, fessus, to declare publicly avow; to offer freely, promise. [pro, fateor.]

prōfligo, are, avi, atum, put to flight, rout.

prōfluo, fluere, fluxi, fluxum, flow from, rise.

prō-fūgiō, ēre, fūgi, to flee, decamp.

prō-gnātus, a, um, part. [gnatus = natus, nascor], born, sprung, descended.

prō-grēdior, i, gressus, to go forward, advance. [gradior.]

prō-hībēo, ēre, hī, hītum, to keep back, hinder, prevent; to defend, protect. [habeo.]

prō-icīo, ēre, icēcī, iectum, to throw forth, sling away. [pro-iacio.]

prōinde, adv., accordingly, therefore; (in like manner).

prōmīneo, ēre, uī, no supine, bend forward.

prōmiscuē, adv. promiscuously, in common.

prō-missus, a, um, pf. part. of promitto; (of hair) long, flowing.

prōmōtus. See **promoveo**.

prōmōveo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move forward.

promptus, a, um, adj., ready.

prōmuntūrium, i, n., headland.

prōnē, adv., bending or leaning forward.

prō-nuntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, to announce, proclaim.

prōpē, comp. prōpius, prep. w. acc. and adv., near, nigh.

prō-pello, ēre, pūli, pulsum, to drive before oneself, to drive back.

prō-pēro, āre, āvī, ātum, to hasten.

prōpinquitas, ātis, f., nearness. [propinquus.]

prōpinquus, a, um, adj., near; as subst., **prōpinquus**, i, m., a kinsman, relation.

prōpior, nearer; **proximus**, next, last or next preceding; no positive adj., adv., **prope**.

prō-pōno, ēre, pōsūi, pōsitum, to put or set forth, to point out, to offer, proffer as a reward.

prōprius, a, um, adj., one's own, special: as subst., **proprium**, ii, n., a peculiar or characteristic mark, a sign.

propter, prep. w. acc., by reason of, on account of.

propterea, adv., on this account, for this reason: **propterea quod**, because.

prōpugnātor, ōris, m., combatant, defender.

prō-pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, to fight.

prō-pulsō, āre, āvī, ātum, freq., to drive back, repel. [propello.]

prōra, ae, f., prow of a ship.

prō-sēquor, i, cūtus, to pursue, to continue the pursuit.

prōspectus, a, um, see **prospicio**.

prōspectus, ūs, m., *view, sight*.

prōspicio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, *look out; provide for*.

prōsterno, ēre, stravi, stratum, *lay low, destroy*.

prōzum, prōdesse, prōfui, *to benefit, be of service to*.

prō-tēgo, ēre, xi, ctum, *to cover in front, cover, protect*.

prō-terrō, ēre, ūi, itum, *to frighten or scare away, to affright*.

prōtinus, adv., *forthwith*.

prōturbo, are, avi, atum, *drive away, repulse*.

prōvectus, see **prōvehō**.

prōvēho, ēre, vixi, vectum, *to advance, carry forward*.

prōvēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come forth, to be produced, to grow*.

prōventus, ūs, m., *result, issue, outcome*.

prō-vīdeo, ēre, vidi, vīsum, (1) *to see beforehand, to foresee*, (2) *provide for*.

prōvincia, ae, f., *a province*.

provinciālis, ē, adj., *of or belonging to a province*.

prōvisus, v. **prōvideo**.

prōvōlo, are, avi, atum, *fly forth, dash forth*.

proximē, adv.

proximus, a, um, adj., *nearest, next*.

prūdētia, ae, f., *foresight, prudence*.

pūbes and **pūber**, ēris, adj., *grown up, adult*; as subst., **pūbēres**, um, m., *grown up men, men*.

publicē, adv., *on behalf or in the name of the State or people*. [publicus.]

publico, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take and apply to the use of the State or community, to confiscate*. [publicus.]

publicus, a, um, adj., *belonging to*

the people, State, or community. [for **populicus**, from **populus**.]

pūdet, ēre, puduit or puditum est, impers. v., *it shames*; me pudet, *I am ashamed*.

pūdōr, ōris, m., *shame, modesty*.

puer, ēri, m., *a boy, child*.

pūērīlis, e, adj., *boyish, of boyhood*. [puer.]

pugna, ae, f., *a battle, combat, fight*.

pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight*.

pulcher, chra, chrum, adj., *beautiful; noble*

pulsus, a, um. See **pello**.

pulsus, ūs, m., *stroke*. [pello.]

pulvis, ēris, m., *dust*.

puppis, is, f., *stern*.

purgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to clear, exculpate, excuse*.

pūto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to consider, judge, think*.

Q.

Q.=**Quintus**.

quā, adv., *where, by which way*. [abl. f. of **qui**.]

quadrāgēni, ae, a, distrib. num., *forty each*.

quādringenti, ae, a, card. num. adj., *four hundred*. [quattuor, centum.]

quaero, ēre, quaesivi, quaesitum, *to seek, ask, enquire*.

quaestio, ōnis, f., *an examination or inquisition by torture*. [quaero.]

quaestor, ōris, m., *a quaestor*.

quaestus, ūs, m., *a gaining, acquiring*. [quaero.]

quālis, ē, interrog. adj., *of what sort?*

quam, adv. and conj.; (1) *as*; (2) *than*; with superl. adj. or adv., *as...as possible*.

quamobrem, adv., *wherefore*.

quamvis, adv., *however much or many; as much as you will; although; quamvis pauci, no matter how few*.

quando, adv., (interrog. *when*); after **si**, at *any time*.

quanto, rel. adv., *by as much as*, according as, *the* (e.g. "*the more the merrier*"). [**quantus**.]

quantōpere, adv., *how much*, *how deeply* or *greatly*.

quantum, adv., *how much*, *as much*, *as far as*.

quantus, a, um, adj., *how great*, *how much*; *as much as*. [**quam**.]

quantus-vīs, tāvis, tumvis, adj., *as great as you will*, *ever so great*, *no matter how great*. [**vis**, fr. volo, vīs, vult, "*you wish*."

quārē, adv., *wherefore*, *why*. [**quae**, res.]

quartus, a, um, ord. num. adj., *the fourth*.

quāsī, conj., *as if*.

quattūor, card. num. adj., *four*.

-que, conj., (enclitic, i.e., appended to previous word), *and*.

quemadomum, adv., *in what way*, *how*.

quēror, quēri, questus sum, *to complain*.

questus. See **queror**.

qui, quae, quod, pron. rel. and (used adjectively) interrog., *who*, *which*, *what*, *that*.

quicquam. See **quisquam**.

quicumque, (or **-cunque**), quaecumque, quodcumque, pron. rel. *whoever*, *whatever*, *all that*, *everything that*.

quid, (neut. of **quis**), adv., *why?*

quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, pron. indef., *a certain*, *a certain one*, *one*.

quidem, adv., *indeed*.

quies, ētis, f., *rest*, *repose*.

quiescētus, a, um, adj., *at rest*, *quiet*, *peaceful*. [**quiesco**, **quies**.]

quīn, conj., *but that*, *that not*. [**qui**, *how*, **ne**.]

quīnam, quāenam, quodnam, pron. interrog., *who*, *which*; *what*, *pray?* [In ch. 44, B. V. = **uter**.]

quincunx, uncis, f., *a quincunx*, an arrangement of trees or other objects in fives, thus: :: :: :: ::

quindēcim, *fifteen*.

quingenti, ae, a, *five hundred*. [**quinque**, **centum**.]

quīni, ae, a, num. distrib. adj., *five each*, *five at a time*.

quinquāginta, *fifty*.

quinque, card. num., indecl., *five*.

quintus, a, um, adj., *fifth*.

quis, (quae), quid, (1) pron. interrog., *who?* *which?* *what?* (2) pron. indef. after **ne**, **si**, **nisi**, *any one*, *anything*. **ne quis**, *in order that no man*.

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam, pron. indef., *any*.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, pron. indef., *any*, *any one*, *anything* (always in a negative connection).

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, pron. indef., *each*, *every*.

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid, or quodquod, indef. pron., *whoever*, *whatever*.

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, indef. pron., *any one you wish*, *any one at all*.

quō, adv., *whither*.

quō, conj., *in order that* (used with comparative degree instead of **ut**).

quō-ad, conj., *till*, *until*.

quod, conj., *because*; *that*.

quōmīnus, conj., *so that not*, (lit. *by which the less*), used after verbs of hindering, and rendered by Eng. *from*.

quōn-iam, conj., *since*, *seeing that*, *whereas*. [**quom**=**cum**, **iam**.]

quō-que, conj., *also*, *too*.

quōque, abl. of **quisque**, *each*.

quōqueversum (quoquoversum),
adv., *in every direction.*

quot, indecl. rel. adj., *how many, as many, which number.*

quōtānnis, adv., *every year, yearly.*

quōtiens or **quōties**, adv., *how often, as often as.* [quot.]

quotidiē, adv., *daily; day by day.*

R.

rādix, icis, f., *a root.*

rādo, ěre, rāsi, rāsum, *shave.*

rāmus, i, m., *a bough, branch.*

rāpīditās, ātis, f., *swiftness.* [rapīdus, rapio.]

rapīna, ae, f., *pillage, plunder.*

rārus, a, um, adj., *few, sparse, few and far between.*

rāsus, a um, part. of rado, *shaven.*

rātio, ōnis, f., *a reckoning, an account; a transaction, business; a care, consideration, regard for a thing; fashion, system, way.*

rātis, is, f., *a raft.*

rē-cēdo, ěre, cessi, cessum, *to go back, fall back, retire.*

rēcens, tis, adj., *fresh, recent.*

recenseo, ěre, censui, censum and censitum, *review.*

receptāculum, i, n., *place of shelter, retreat.*

receptus, a, um, pl. part. of recipio.

receptus, ūs, m., *retreat, refuge.*

rēcessus, ūs, m., *a going back, retreat.* [recedo.]

recido, ěre, cīdi, cāsum, *fall back, return.*

recipero, are, avi, atum, *get back, recover.* See recuperō.

rē-cipio, ěre, cēpi, ceptum, *to receive; se, to betake oneself anywhere, to retire, retreat.* [capio.]

rē-cīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to read out (a letter, etc.).*

rē-clīno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bend back, lean back.*

rectē, adv., *rightly, properly.*

rectus, a, um, adj., *straight, direct.*

rē-cūpĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get back, recover, regain.*

rē-cūso, āre, āvi, ātum, *to object to, refuse.* [causa.]

rēda. See rhēda.

redactus. See redigo.

redditus, see red-do.

red-do, ěre, dīdi, dītum, *to give back, restore; to render, grant.*

rēd-ĕo, īi, ītum, ěre, *to come back; to be reduced to; to be referred to.*

rēd-īgo, ěre, ĕgi, actum, *to bring or reduce to any condition.* [ago.]

rēdīmo, ěre, ĕmi, emptum, *buy back, purchase; farm (revenues).*

rēdīntegro, are, avi, atum, *renew; revive.*

rēditio, ōnis, f., *a going back, returning.*

rēditus, ūs, m., *a returning, return.*

rē-dūco, ěre, xī, ctum, *to lead back, draw off troops.*

rēfectus. V. reficio.

rēfĕro, -ferre, rettūli (retuli), rĕlātum, *to carry back; report; refer.* **gratiam referre**, *to show gratitude, to repay, requite.*

rēficio, ěre, fĕci, fectum, *to refit, repair.*

refractus. See refringo.

refringo, fringere, frĕgi, fractum, *break, break down.* [frango.]

rē-fūgiō, ěre, fūgi, *to flee back.*

rĕgiō, ōnis, f., *a district, territory.* [rego.]

rĕgius, a, um, adj., *kingly, royal.*

regno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be king, to reign.* [regnum.]

regnum, i, n., *kingly authority, sovereignty, chieftainship; a kingdom, the territory of a king or chief.* [rex.]

rēgo, ēre, xi, etum, *to direct; to control, govern, rule.*

rē-grēdior, i, gressus, *to go back, retreat.*

rēiectus, a, um, part. reicio.

rō-īcio, ēre, reīci, iectum, *to cast back, drive back.* [iacio.]

relanguesco, ere, langui, no supine, *become enfeebled.*

rēlātus; a, um, part. refero.

rē-lēgātus, a, um, part. relēgo.

rē-lēgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to send away, remove out of the way.*

rēlictus, a, um, v. relinquo.

rēligio, ōnis, f., *reverence for the gods, religion; in plur., superstitious practices; matters of religion, scruples of conscience.*

rē-linquo, ēre, liqui, lictum, *to leave behind, to leave remaining: pass., to remain.*

rēliqus, a, um, adj., *that is left, remaining; in plur. as subst. rēliqui, ōrum, m., the others, the rest.* [relinquo.]

rēmāneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to stay, remain behind.*

rēmex, Igis, m., *rower.*

rēmigro, are, no pf., no supine, *move back, remove.*

rēmigo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to row.*

reminiscor, minisci, no pf., no supine, *remember, recollect, go's gen.*

rē-missus, a, um, part of remitto; as adj., *slack, less severe.*

rē-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, *to send back, to slacken, remit, abate.*

remollesco, escēre, no perf. or supine, *become weak.*

remōtus, a, um, adj., *far off, remote.*

rē-mōvēo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move back, withdraw.*

remūneror, ari, atus sum, *recompense, repay.* [munus.]

rēmus, i, m., *an oar.*

rēnō, (rhēno), ōnis, m., *some take this to mean a reindeer-skin; it is probably a fur pelisse or jacket, made from the skin of an animal dressed with the hair on.*

rēnōvo, are, avi, atum, *renew.*

renuntio, iare, iavi, iatum, *bring back word, report; declare elected.*

rē-pello, ēre, reppūli, rēpulsum, *to drive back.*

rēpente, adv., *suddenly.*

rēpentino, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

rēpentinus, a, um, adj., *sudden, unlooked-for.*

rē-pērio, ire, reppēri, rēpertum, *to find, meet with.* [pario.]

rēpertus, a, um, part. reperio.

rē-pēto, ēre, īi or īvi, itum, *to ask or apply again for; demand as a right.*

repleo, ēre, plēvi, plētum, *fill up, supply amply.*

rē-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear back.*

rē-posco, ēre, (no perf. or sup.), *to exact, require.*

repraesento, are, avi, atum, *do at once or forthwith.*

re-prēhendo, ēre, di, sum, *to blame, find fault with.*

rēpressus, p. part. of reprīmo, *to check.*

rēpūdīo, iare, iavi, iatum, *reject, scorn.*

rēpugno, are, avi, atum, *oppose, resist.*

rēpulsus, a, um, part. repello.

rēquīro, ēre, quīsvi or īi, quīsitum, *to demand.* [quaero.]

rēs, rei, f., *a thing, matter, fact, event, etc.* The exact meaning depends on the context, e.g. **res frumentaria**, *corn supply, provisions.*

rēsarcio, sarcire, sarsi, sartum, *repair, make good.*

rescīdi, see rescindo.

rescindo, ēre, scīdi, scissum, *to break up.* [scindo, *to cleave.*]

rescisco, ēre, scīvi, scitum, *discover, find out.*

rescribo, ēre, scripsi, scriptum, *transfer from one branch of the army to another; re-enlist.*

rē-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to save up, reserve; halt.*

rēsideo, ēre, sēdi, no supine, *remain behind, be left.*

rēsido, ēre, sēdi, no supine, *settle down, subside.*

rē-sisto, ēre, stīti, *to oppose, withstand.*

rē-spicio, ēre, spexi, spectum, *to look back or behind one.*

rē-spondēo, ēre, di, sum, *to answer, reply.*

rē-sponsum, i, n., *an answer.*

rēs-publica, reipublicae, f., *a commonwealth, state; the public weal.*

rē-spuo, spuere, spui, no supine, *spit out; reject.*

rē-stinguo, ēre, stīxi, stinctum, *put out, extinguish.*

rē-stitūo, ēre, ūi, ūtum, *to set up again; to replace, restore, revive.* [statuo.]

rē-tinēo, ēre, ūi, ūtum, *to hold fast, keep, maintain, preserve.*

re-traho, ēre, traxi, tractum, *bring back, drag back.*

rē-vello, ēre, velli, vulsum, *pull back, tear away, tear down.*

rē-versus. See revertor.

rē-vertō, ēre, verti, versum, *return, found chiefly in perf. tenses; the other tenses usually deponent.*

rē-vertor, i, versus, *to turn back, return, retire.*

re-vincio, ire, vinxi, vinctum, *bind together, hold, fasten.*

rē-voco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to recall, summon to return, challenge.*

rex, rēgis, m., *a ruler of a territory, a king, chieftain.* [rego.]

rhēda, ae, f., *carriage, chariot.*

ripā ae, f., *a bank of a river.*

rivus, i, m., *a small stream of water, a brook.*

rōbur, ōris, n., *oak.*

rōgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to ask, beg, request.*

rōstrum, i, n., *beak of a ship, sharp prow used as a ram in fighting.*

rōta, ae, f., *wheel.*

rūbus, i, m., *bramble-bush.*

rūmor, ōris, m., *hearsay, unauthenticated report, rumor.*

rūpēs, is, f., *cliff, steep rock.*

rursus, adv., *back, back again, again.* [contr. fr. revorsus from revertor.]

S.

sacerdos, dōtis, e., *priest.* [sacer, do.]

sacrāmentum, i, n., *oath, military oath, oath of allegiance.*

sācrificium, īi, n., *a sacrifice.* [sacer, facio.]

saepe, adv., *frequently, often.*

saepenumero, v. saepe.

saevio, ire, īi, itum, *be furious, rage.* [saevus.]

sagitta, ae, f., *an arrow.*

sagittarius, i, n., *an archer, bowman.*

sāgūlum, i, n., dimin., *a small military cloak.* [sagum.]

saltus, ūs, m., (1) *a woodland pasture; (2) a mountain pass.*

sālūs, ūtis, f., *safety.*

sancio, ire, xi, etum, *to make sacred*

or *inviolable* by a religious act; to *decree*, *establish*, *ordain*.

sanctus, a, um, part. sancio: as adj., of persons, *sacred*, *inviolable*.

sanguis, inis, m., *blood*.

sānitās, ātis, f., *soundness* of mind, *good sense*.

sāno, are, avi, atum, *make sound*, *cure*, *remedy*.

sānus, a, um, adj., *moderate*, *reasonable*.

sāpio, ěre, īvi or īi, *to have sense* or *discernment*.

sarcīna, ae, f., *baggage*, *pack* of an individual soldier; see Introduction.

sarcio, ĩre, sarsi, sartum, *to mend*, *repair*.

sarmentum, i, n., *a twig*; in pl., *faggot*.

satisfactio, ōnis, f., *apology*, *excuse*.

sātisfācio, ěre, fēcī, factum, *to give satisfaction*, *satisfy*, *content*; *to make excuse*, *apologize*.

sātus. See **sero**.

saucius, a, um, adj., *wounded*.

saxum, i, n., *stone*, *rock*.

scāla, ae, f., *a ladder*, *a scaling-ladder*. [for scandla, from scando, *to climb*.]

scāpha, ae, f., *skiff*, *light boat*. [σκάφη.]

scēlērātus, a, um, part. scelero: as adj., *bad*, *wicked*, *infamous*: in masc., subst., *a miscreant*.

scōlēro, āre, no perf., ātum, *to pollute with crime*. [scelus.]

scōlus, ěris, n., *sin*, *crime*.

scienter, adv., *cleverly*, *wisely*. [scio.]

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge*, *skill*, *cleverness*.

scindo, ěre, scīdi, scissum, *to cut*, *rend*: vullum, *to pull* or *tear down*.

scīo, ĩre, īvi, ītum, *to know*.

scorpio, ōnis, m., *scorpion*, a military

engine for throwing stones and darts in time of siege.

scribo, ěre, psi, ptum, *to write*.

scrōbis, is, m, and f., *pit*.

scūtum, i, n., *a shield*.

sē, sēsē, pron. reflex. of both numbers (gen. sui, dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē or sēsē), *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*: **interse**, with (from) *each other*.

sēcīus, adv., comp. of sēcus, *otherwise*: nihilo secius, *nevertheless*.

sēco, are, secui, sectum, *cut*.

sēcrēto, adv., *in secret*, *secretly*.

sectio, ōnis, f., *booty*.

sector, āri, ātus sum, intensive, *to pursue eagerly*. [sequor.]

sectūra, ae, f., *a cutting*, *diggings*, *excavation*, *mine*.

sēcundum, prep. with acc., *next to*; *according to*; *after*.

sēcundus, a, um, adj., (1) *the following* or *next to the first* in time or order, *the second*; (2) *favorable*. [sequor.]

sēcūris, is, f., *axe*; figuratively *power*, *authority*, with reference to the licitor's axe, carried as an emblem of a magistrate's power.

sēcus, adv., *otherwise*; **sēcīus**, compar., *nihilo sēcīus*, *none the less*, *nevertheless*.

sed, conj., *but*.

sēdēcim, indecl. num., *sixteen*. [sex, decem.]

sēdēs, is, f., *a seat*, *dwelling-place*, *settlement*. [sedeo.]

sēditio, ōnis, f., *mutiny*, *revolt*, *sedition*.

sēditiosus, a, um, adj., *sedition*, *mutinous*.

sēgēs, ětis, f., *corn-field*, *standing grain*, *corn in the field*, *crop*.

semel, adv., *once*.

sēmentis, is, f., *sowing*, *planting*. [sēmen.]

sāmīta, ae, f., a path.

semper, adv., always, ever.

senātor, ōris, a senator, member of the Roman senate; applied by Caesar to the Gallic councillor.

sēnātus, ūs, m., the council of elders, the Senate. [senex.]

sēnex, sēnis, m., an old man.

sēni, ae, a, distrib. num., six apiece. [sex.]

sententiā, ae, f., a way of thinking, opinion. [sentio.]

sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, to perceive, notice, observe.

sentis, is, m., thorn, brier.

sēparātim, adv., separately.

sēparātus, a, um, adj., separated, put off to one side.

sēpāro, are, avi, atum, to separate, to part or divide.

sēpēs, is, f., hedge.

septem, card. num. adj., seven.

septentrio, ōnis, almost always in the plural, the seven stars of the Bear, the north. [literally the seven ploughing oxen, septem triones.]

septimus, a, um, ord. num. adj., seventh. [septem.]

septingenti, ae, a, num. adj., seven hundred. [septem centum.]

septuāgintā, indecl. num., seventy.

sēpultūra, ae, f., burial. [sepelio.]

sēquor, i, sēcūtus or sequūtus sum, to follow, attend.

sermo, ōnis, m., a talking, conversation. [sero=to join words.]

sēro, adv., too late. [serus.]

sēro, ēre, sēvi, sātum, to sow, plant.

servilis, e, adj., belonging to or of a slave. [servus.]

servio, ire, ivi, or ii, itum, be a slave, to serve, be devoted to.

servītūs, ūtis, f., slavery. [servus.]

servo, āre, āvi, ātum, to keep, lay up, preserve; beset, watch.

servus, i, m., a slave, serf.

sēsquipedālis, e, adj., a foot and a half wide, thick, &c. [sēsqui, one half more; pes, foot.]

seu. See **sive**.

sēvēritās, tātis, f., sternness, strictness, rigor, stringency.

sē-vōco, āre, āvi, ātum, to call apart, take aside.

sexāgintā, sixty.

sexcenti, ae, a, num. adj., six hundred. [sex, centum.]

sexdēcim. See **sedēcim**.

sī, conj., if.

sic, adv., so, thus.

siccitās, ātis, f., dryness (of the weather), drought. [siccus.]

sic-ut, adv., as, just as.

sic-ūti = sicut.

sīdus, čris, n., a constellation, a group of stars.

significātiō, ōnis, f., a making of a sign or token; tidings. [signum, facio.]

significo, are, avi, atum, show, indicate, intimate by signs.

signum, i, n., a military standard, ensign.

sīlentium, i, n., silence. [sileo.]

silva, ae, f., a wood, forest.

silvestris, e, adj., wooded, woodland. [silva.]

sīmīlis, e, adj., like, like unto.

sīmilitudo, inis, f., resemblance, similarity.

sīmūl, adv., at the same time, at once; sometimes=**simul atque**.

sīmūlācrum, i, n., an image. [simulo = to make like, similis.]

sīmūlātiō, ōnis, f., pretence.

simul atque, conj. adv., as soon as.

simultās, ātis, f., *deceit*.

sīn, conj., *if however, but if*.

sīne, prep. w. abl., *without*.

singillātīm (singulatīm), adv., *one by one, singly*. [singuli.]

singulāris, e, adj. (*alone of its kind, hence*) *singular, remarkable*. [singuli.]

singulī, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., *one to each, separate, singly*.

sinister, tra, trum, adj., *left hand, adverse*.

sinistra, ae, f., *the left hand*; sub **sinistrā**, on the left; (*sinistra* really an adj. qual. manus understood.)

sinistrorsus, adv., *towards the left side, to the left*. [sinistro versus.]

sīno, sīnere, sivi, sītum, *permit, allow, let*.

siquidem, conj., *if only, in so far as*.

sītus, ūs, m., *position*. [sino.]

sive (seu), conj. *whether* (= *either if*), **sive** (seu) . . . **sive** (seu), *whether . . . or*.

sōcer, ĕri, m., *father-in-law*.

sociētās, ātis, f., *alliance, league*.

sōciūs, īi, m., *an ally*.

Sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun, the Sun-god*.

sōlātium, ī, n., *consolation*. [sōlor, console.]

soldūrius, ī, m., *retainer, follower*.

sōlēo, ĕre, ītus sum, semi-dep., *to be accustomed, to be wont*.

sōlītūdo, īnis, f., *a lonely place, a desert, wilderness*. [solus.]

sollertia, ae, f., *skill, cleverness, versatility*.

sollīcīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try to win over, incite, instigate for warlike purposes*.

sollīcītūdo, īnis, f., *anxiety*.

sōlum, ī, n., *the soil, ground*; **solum agri**, *the bare ground*; **solum fossae**, *bottom of the trench*.

sōlum, adv., *only*.

sōlus, a, um, adj., *alone, only*.

solvo, ĕre, solvi, sōlūtum, *to loose*; (*naves*), *to weigh anchor, set sail*.

sōnītus, ūs, m., *sound, noise*.

sōnus, ī, m., *sound*.

sōror, ōris, f., *sister*,—**soror ex matre**, *half sister on mother's side*.

sors, sortis, f., *lot, chance*.

spātium, īi, n., *a space, distance, interval*.

spēcies, ĕi, f., *outward appearance, look, seeming*: **in speciem**, *for a show, seemingly*. [specio.]

specto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to look at, look to, bear in mind*; *to look for, i.e., await, expect*. [specio.]

spēcūlātor, ōris, m., *a scout, explorer*.

spēcūlātōrius, a, um, adj., *for scouting, spying*,—**navigium speculatorium**, *a spy-boat*.

spēcūlor, ari, atus sum, *watch, reconnoitre*.

spēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hope, expect*.

spes, spēi, f., *hope*.

spīritus, ūs, m., *breath, air*;—pl., *airs, pride*.

spōlio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to rob, de-spoil, strip off*.

sponte, abl. f., *no other case found but a (rare) gen. spontis*: in expressions, **sponte meā, tuā, suā**, *of free will, of one's own accord*. [spondeo.]

stātīm, adv., *on the spot, i.e., at once, forthwith, straight-way, immediately*. [sto.]

stātio, ōnis, f., *an outpost, a roadstead*.

statuo, uēre, ui, ūtum, *place, determine, judge*; *resolve*; *take measures*.

stātus, ūs, m., *position, situation, condition*.

stātūra, ae, f., *height or size of the body, stature*. [sto.]

stātus, ūs, m., *condition, position, circumstances.* [sto.]

stīmulus, i, m., *a goad; a sharp stake set in the ground as an obstacle to an advancing enemy.*

stipendiārius, a, um, adj., *tributary, subject to tribute; pl., subst., stipendiarii, tributaries.*

stipendium, ii, n., *a tax, tribute; soldier's pay.* [stips, pendo.]

stipēs, itis, m., *log, trunk of a tree.*

stirps, is, f., *stem, stock, race.*

sto, āre, stēti, stātum, *to stand; to abide, adhere to.*

strāmentum, i, n., *straw: (casae) stramentis tectae, thatched.* [sterno.]

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, clatter.*

stūdēo, ēre, ūi, *to take pains about, devote oneself to.*

stūdiōsē, adv., *eagerly, carefully, with much pains.* [studium.]

stūdium, ii, n., *study, devotion to: studia rei militaris, military pursuits.* [studeo.]

stultitia, ae, f., *folly, lack of foresight.*

sūb, prep. w. acc. or abl., *under.*

subactus. See **subīgo**.

subdōlus, a, um, adj., *crafty, cunning.*

sub-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, *to draw up.*

subductiō, ōnis, f., *the hauling ashore of a ship.* [sub, duco.]

subēo, ire, īvi or īi, itum, *to enter, undergo.*

subfōdio (suff.), ēre, fōdi, fossum, *stab underneath.* [fodio, dig.]

sūb-īcio, ēre, īcī, iectum, *to place beneath.*

sub-īectus, a, um, part. of **subicio**, *lying beneath.*

subīgo, ēre, ēgi, actum, *subdue, conquer.*

sūbīto, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.* [sub, eo.]

subītus, a, um, adj., *sudden, unexpected.*

sublātus, a, um, part. **tollo**.

sub-lēvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to raise up, support.*

sublīca, ae, f., *a stake, pile.*

sublūo, ēre, no perf., lātum, *wash.*

subministro, are, avi, atum, *supply, provide.*

sub-mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to send up (reinforcements).*

submōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move out of the way, move on, repulse.*

subrūo, ēre, rūi, rūtum, *to undermine.*

sub-sēquor, i, cūtus, *to follow close after.*

subsīdium, ii, n., *aid, relief, reinforcement, support.* [sub-sideo.]

subsīdo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *stay, remain behind.*

sub-sisto, ēre, stīti, *to stand still, to hold out, hold fast.*

sub-sum, no perf., esse, *to be close at hand.*

subtrāho, ēre, traxi, tractum, *carry off, withdraw.*

subvectiō, ōnis, f., *transportation, conveyance.* [subveho.]

subvēho, ēre, vexi, vectum, *carry up.*

sub-vēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come to one's aid, to succour.*

suc-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to come into the place of, succeed.* [sub.]

suc-cendo, ēre, di, sum, *to set on fire from below; in gen., to set alight, set on fire.*

successus, ūs, m., *an advance, rapid approach.*

suc-cido, ēre, cīdi, cīsum, *to cut down.*

suc-cisus. See succido.

suc-cumbo, ěre, cubui, cubitum, yield, submit.

suc-curro, ěre, curri, cursum, to run or hasten to the aid or help of.

sūdis (nom. sing. rare), is, f., a stake.

sūdor, ōris, m., sweat; toil, fatigue. [sūdo, sweat.]

sufficio, ěre, fēci, fectum, suffice; hold out.

suffrāgium, ii, n., a vote.

suggestus, ūs, m., a raised place, mound, platform for speaking. [sub, gero.]

sui, sibi, etc., reflex. pron. of 3rd person, of himself, herself, itself, themselves; lacks the nom.

summitto. See submitto.

sum, esse, fui, to be.

summa, ae, f., the whole; **summa imperii**, supreme command.

summus, i, n., neut. of **summus** as subst., highest point or part of, top, summit; **ab summo**, from the top, from above.

summus, a, um, (superl. adj., fr. superus), the top of.

sūmo, ěre, sumpsi, sumptum, to take; **poenas sumere**, to take satisfaction, exact the penalty, inflict punishment.

sumptuosus, a, um, adj., costly, expensive. [sumptus.]

sumptus, ūs, m., expense.

superbē, adv., proudly, haughtily.

sūpērior, ius, comp. adj. See superus.

sūpēro, āre, āvi, ātum, to overcome, conquer, prevail. [super.]

supersēdeo, ěre, sēdi, sessum, refrain from, gov's abl. [super, sedeo.]

sūper-sum, esse, fui, to be over (as a remainder), to be left, remain, survive.

sūperus, a, um, adj., that is above, upper: comp. **sūpērior**, ius, of time, former, past, previous; of strength in a battle or other contest, superior, stronger,

victorious: sup. **sūprēmus** and **summus**, of rank, etc., highest, most distinguished: **summae res**, things of the highest importance. [super.]

suppēto, ěre, petivi or ii, petitur, be at hand, hold out.

supplémentum, i, n., re-enforcement. [a filling up, sub, pleo.]

supplex, leis, c., a suppliant. [sub, plico, bend.]

supplicatio, ōnis, f., thanksgiving.

suppliciter, adv., humbly, submissively.

supplicium, ii, n., punishment, (of death), execution. [supplex, sup-plico to bend the knees, kneel down (for execution, etc.).]

supporto, are, avi, atum, carry or bring up, convey.

sūprā, prep. w. acc. and adv., above; of time, before. [superus.]

suscipio, ěre, cēpi, ceptum, to undertake.

suspectus, a, um, part. suspicio.

suspicio, ěre, spexi, ctum, to mistrust, suspect. [sub specio.]

suspicio, ōnis, f., mistrust, suspicion.

suspīcor, ari, atus sum, to suspect.

sustento, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., to bear, endure, support. [sustineo.]

sustīnēo, ěre, tinui, tentum, to hold up or out against, to withstand. [subs = sub, teneo.]

sustūli, v. tollo.

sūus, a, um, pron. poss. of 3rd person, his own, her own, its own, their own; his, her, its, their.

T.

T. = Titus.

tabernāculum, i, n., a tent.

tābūla, ae, f., writing-tablet; list.

tabulātum, i, n., a floor, storey (of a tower or house).

tāceo, ēre, ūi, itum, *be silent; say nothing, pass over in silence.*

tācitus, a, um, adj., *silent.*

tālēa, ae, bar, rod (of iron.)

tālis, e, adj., *of such a kind; such* (referring to quality always).

tam, adv. of degree, *so, so much.*

tāmen, adv., *however, nevertheless, yet.*

tāmetsi, conj., *notwithstanding that, although.* [contr. fr. *tamen etsi.*]

tandem, adv., *at last, finally; in questions, pray.*

tango, ēre, tēligi, tactum, *to touch.*

tanto, see tantus.

tantōpēre, adv., (= **tanto opere**), *so greatly, so very; so vehemently.*

tantūlus, a, um, adj., dim., *so little, so small.* [tantus.]

tantum, adv., *so much; just so much and no more, only, merely.*

tantus, a, um, adj., *so great in amount, size, etc.: subst. tantum*, i, n., *so much: abl. tanto* (with comparatives), *by so much, so much the, the*, (cf. quantus).

tardē, adv., *slowly.*

tardo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to impede, retard.*

tardus, a, um, adj., *slow; tardior, less active.*

taurus, i, m., *a bull.*

taxus, i, f., *a yew-tree.*

tectum, i, n., *roof; house.* [tego, cover.]

tectus, a, um, part. tego.

tēgimentum, i, n., *a covering.* [tego.]

tēgo, ēre, xi, etum, *to cover.*

tēlum, i, n., *a weapon for throwing missiles, a javelin, etc.*

tēmērārius, a, um, adj., *rash, inconsiderate.* [temere.]

tēmērē, adv., *at random, rashly, heedlessly.*

tēmēritās, ātis, f., *rashness, indiscretion.* [temere.]

tēmo, ōnis, m., *the pole of a chariot.*

temperantia, ae, f., *moderation, self-control.*

tempērātus, a, um, part. of tempero. *temperate.*

tempero, are, avi, atum, *refrain, control one's self, forbear.*

tempestās, ātis, f., *season of the year; storm; weather.*

tempto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to try, tempt.*

tempus, ōris, n., *time.*

tendo, ēre, tetendi, tensum or tentum, *stretch, extend; pitch tent, encamp.*

tenēbrae, arum, pl. f., *darkness.*

tēnēo, ēre, ūi, tentum, *to hold, keep.*

tēner, era, erum, adj., *tender, young.*

tento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try, test, tempt, try to influence, endeavor.*

tēnūis, e, adj., (*thin*); *feeble, weak.*

tenuitās, ātis, f., *thinness, weakness, poverty.*

tenuiter, adv., *thinly.*

ter, num. adv., *thrice, three times.*

tērēs, ētis, adj., *well-turned, round, smooth, tapering.* [tero, rub.]

tergum, i, n., *back,—a tergo, post tergum, in the rear.*

terni, ae, a, distrib. num., *three each, three at a time, by threes.*

terra, ae, f., *the (dry) land; the earth; plur. terrae, the earth, the world.*

terrēnus, a, um, adj., *of earth, earthy.*

terrēo, ēre, ūi, itum, *to frighten.*

terrīto, are (no perf. or sup.) freq., *to put in terror, to frighten.* [terreo.]

terrōr, ōris, in., *fright, alarm.*

tertius, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the third.* [ter.]

tertius-décimus, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the thirteenth*.

testāmentum, i, n., *will, testament*.

testimōnium, ii, n., *evidence, proof*. [testor.]

testis, is, c., *a witness*.

testūdo,inis, f., *a tortoise*. As a military term, the word means *a covering* or *shed* for the protection of soldiers attacking fortifications. [testa=*a shell*.]

tignum, i, n., *a beam, log, pile*.

timéo, ēre, ūi, (no sup.) *to dread, fear*.

timidē, adv., *faint-heartedly, timidly*. [timidus, timeo.]

timidus, a, um, adj., *fearful, afraid, alarmed, cowardly, timid*.

timor, ōris, m., *dread, fear*. [timeo.]

tūlēro, are, avi, atum, *to bear, endure, sustain*.

tollo, tollēre, sustūli, sublātum, *to raise, lift, or set up; to take away, remove*.

tormentum, i, n., *torture*. [torqueo, to twist.]

torréo, ēre, torrūi, tostum, *to scorch*.

tōt, num. adj. indecl., *so many*.

tōtidem, indecl. adj., *the same number, just as many*.

tōtus, a, um (gen. ūus, dat. i), adj., *the whole, entire, all*.

trabs, is, f., *beam, timber*.

tractus, v. traho.

trādo, ēre, didi, dītum, *to give or hand over; to deliver by teaching, to teach*. [trans, do.]

trādūco, ēre, xi, ctum, *to lead or bring across or over*. [trans, duco.]

trāgūla, ae, f., *a kind of javelin or lance used by the Gauls*. [traho.]

trāho, ēre, traxi, tractum, *to draw, drag along*.

trāīcio, ēre, iēcī, iectum, *to pierce through, transfix*. [trans, iacio.]

trā-no, nare, navi, natum, *swim across*. [trans, no.]

tranquillitās, ātis, f., *calm*.

trans, prep. w. acc., *across, over, on the far side of*.

transcendo, ēre, scendi, scensum, *to climb over, — transcendere in naves, to board the ships*.

transduco. See traduco.

trans-ēo, ire, ivi or ii, itum, *to go across or over, to cross*.

trans-fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to bear across, to bring or carry over*.

trans-figo, ēre, xi, xum, *to pierce through, transfix*.

transfōdio, ere, fōdi, fōssum, *pierce through, stab, transfix*.

transgrēdiōr, grēdi, gressus sum, *to go or pass over, cross*.

transītus, ūs, m., *a going or passing over, a passage, crossing*. [transeo.]

translātus, a, um, part. transfero.

trans-mārinus, a, um, adj., *brought across or from beyond sea, imported*.

transmissus, ūs, m., *crossing, interval, distance*.

transmitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, *send over*.

transporto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey across*.

transtrum, i, n., *thwart, cross-beam*.

transversus, pf. part. of trans-vertō; as adj., *crosswise, athwart, transverse*.

trēcenti, ae, a, adj., *three hundred*.

trēdēcim, indecl. num., *thirteen*.

trēpīdo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bustle about anxiously, to hurry with alarm*.

trēs, trīa, card. num. adj., *three*.

tribūnus, i, m., *a chieftain, commander, tribune*; **tribuni militum**, military tribunes, officers of the army, six to each legion, who commanded in turn, each two months at a time.

tribūo, ēre, tribūi, tribūtum, *to assign.*

tribūtum, i, n., *a stated payment, tribute.*

triduum, i, n., *space of three days, three days.* [tres, dies.]

triennium, i, n., *space of three years, three years.* [tres, annus.]

trigintā, indecl. num., *thirty.*

trīni, ae, a, num. adj. distrib., *three at a time; in groups of three.* [tres.]

tripertito, adv., *in three divisions.* [tres, pars.]

triplex, plicis, adj., *threefold, triple.* [tres, plico.]

triquētrus, tra, trum, adj., *triangular.*

tristis, e, adj., *sad, gloomy, sorrowful.*

tristitia, ae, f., *sadness, dejection.*

truncus, i, m., *trunk of a tree.*

tu, tui, pers. pron. *thou, you* (sing.); pl. **vos**, vestri or vestrum.

tūba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, eri, tuitus or tutus sum, *look at, behold; see to, protect, defend, support.*

tūll. See **fero**.

tum, adv., *then.*

tumultuor, ari, atus sum, *make a disturbance, be in confusion.*

tumultuōsē, adv., *with confusion.*

tūmultus, ūs, m., *commotion, disturbance.*

tūmulus, i, m., *a mound.* [tumeo = *to swell.*]

tunc, adv., *then, at this juncture.*

turma, ae, f., *a squadron.*

turpis, e, adj., *base, shameful, dishonorable.*

turpiter, adv., *disgracefully, basely.*

turpitudō, inis, f., *baseness, dishonor.*

turris, is (acc. *turrin* and *turrem*; abl. *turri* and *turre*), f., *a tower.*

tūtē, adv., *safely, securely.*

tūtō, adv., *in safely, safely, securely.*

tūtus, a, um, part. tueor. As adj., *safe.*

tuus, a, um, poss. adj., *thy, thine; your* (if addressed to one person.)

U.

ūbī, adv., (of place), *where; (of time), when.*

ūbicumquē, adv., *wherever.*

ūbiquē, adv., *anywhere, everywhere* (disting. from *ūbiquē* = *ūbī-quē*, "and where").

ulciscor, i, ultus, *to take vengeance on, avenge oneself on.*

ullus, a, um, adj., *any, any at all.* [for *unulus*, dimin. of *unus*.]

ultērior, ius, comp. adj., *farther.*

ultimus, a, um, sup. adj., *farthest, most distant*: **ultimi**, ōrum, m., *the hindmost.*

ultra, prep. with acc., *beyond, on the far side of.*

ultro, adv., *unasked; unprovoked; of one's own accord.*

ultus, v. **ulciscor**.

ūlulātus, us, m., *a yell, war-whoop.*

umquam, adv., *ever, at any time;* (disting. fr. *semper*, *ever* = *always*).

ūnā, adv., *together, in company.* [unus.]

undē, adv., *from which place, whence.*

undēcim, card. num. indecl., *eleven.*

undēcimus, a, um, ord. num. *eleventh.*

undēquadrāgintā, card. num. indecl., *thirty-nine.* ["one from forty."]

undiquē, adv., *from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides.*

ūniversus, a, um, adj., *all together, in a body, as a whole, whole.*

ūnus, a, um, card. num. adj., *one*:

ad unum, to a man, i. e., without exception.

urbānus, a, um, adj., of the city, belonging to the city.

urbs, is, f., city.

urgeo, ēre, ursi, no supine, press, push; press hard upon, oppress.

ūrus, i, m., a wild-ox, aurochs.

ūsitatus, a, um, adj., usual, common, familiar.

usque, adv., all the way : usque ad, right up to.

ūsus, ūs, m., use, employment ; need, occasion ; usefulness, use : **ex usu** or **usui esse**, to be useful or advantageous. [utor.]

ūsus, a, um, part. utor.

ūt or **ūti**, adv. and conj., with indic., as ; when ; with subjunctive, that, so that, in order that.

ūter, ūtra, ūtrum, pron. interrog., which of the two.

ūter-que, ūtrāque, ūtrumque, pron., each of two, both (separately ; opp. to **ambo**, both together).

ūtī, conj. See ut.

ūtī, infin. of ūtor.

ūtīlis, e, adj., useful, advantageous.

ūtīlitās, ātis, f., usefulness, advantage, benefit.

ūtor, i, ūsus sum, to use, accept, enjoy.

utrimque, adv., on both sides.

utrum, conj., whether.

uxor, ōris f., a wife.

V.

vācātio, ōnis, f., freedom, exemption from a service, etc. [vaco.]

vāco, are, avi, atum, be unoccupied, lie waste.

vācuus, a, um, adj., empty, clear, vacant, unoccupied.

vādum, i, n., a ford.

vāgina, ae, f., a scabbard, sheath.

vāgor, āri, ātus, to go to and fro, roam, wander. [vagus.]

vālēo, ēre, ūi, itum, to be strong : to have power or influence, to avail.

valētūdo, Inis, f., state of health ; health.

valles or **vallis**, is, f., a vale, valley.

vallum, i, n., an earthen wall or rampart set with palisades, a rampart.

vārīetās, ātis, f., diversity, variety.

vārius, a, um, adj., varying, different, changing.

vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, to empty of inhabitants, to lay waste. [vastus.]

vastus, a, um, adj., vast, wide-spreading, immense, enormous.

vāticinātio, ōnis, f., divination, foretelling, predicting.

vectigal, ālis, n., tax. [veho.]

vectigālis, e, adj., tributary ; as subst., a tributary, one who pays tribute.

vectōrius, a, um, adj., for transport. [veho.]

vehementer, adv., vigorously, violently ; very, exceedingly.

vēho, ēre, veki, vectum, bear, carry, convey.

vel, conj., or ; even. — **vel** . . . **vel**, either . . . or.

velim and **vellem**, see volo.

vēlōcītās, ātis, f., speed, swiftness.

[velox.]

vēlōciter, adv., speedily, swiftly ; comp. **velocius** ; sup. **velocissime**. [velox.]

vēlox, ōcis, adj., swift, active, rapid, quick.

vēlum, i, n., a sail.

vēlut, adv., just as.—**velut si**, just as if.

vēnātio, ōnis, f., hunting, the chase. [venor.]

vēnātor, ōris, m., a hunter. [venor.]

vendo, ēre, vendidi, venditum, *sell, offer, for sale.* [vēnum, do.]

vēnia, ae, f., *pardon, favor, indulgence.*

vēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come.*

ventīto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to come often, to keep coming.* [venio.]

ventus, i, m., *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

verbum, i, n., *a word.*

vērēor, ēri, Itus, *to fear or be afraid.*

vergo, vergēre, *to incline, turn, verge.*

vergōbrētus, i, m., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

vērīsimilis, e, adj., *likely, probable.*

vērītus, a, um, part. vereor.

vērō, adv., *in truth, assuredly, however.* [verus.]

verso, are, avi, atum, *turn often; change.*

versor, āri, ātus, (properly the mid. form of verso, are, freq. of verto), *stay, dwell, be in a place, or mix among or with people.*

versus, ūs, m., *a line of poetry, a verse.*

versus, adv. and prep., *towards, in the direction of.*

verto, ēre, verti, versum, *turn; change.*

vērus, a, um, adj., *true, real; right, just, reasonable.*

vērūtum, i, n., *a dart, javelin.* [veru, a spit.]

vesper, ēris, (locative vesperi, acc. mostly vesperum), m., *the evening.*

vester, tra, trum, adj.; *your, yours* (addressed to more than one.)

vestigium, īi, n., *a footprint, track, trace.*

vestio, ire, vestivi, vestitum, *to clothe.* [vestis.]

vestis, is, f., *covering; garment, clothing.*

vestitus. See vestio.

veterānus, a, um, adj., *old, veteran;* as subst., *a veteran.*

vēto, āre, vetūi, vētitum, *to forbid.*

vētus, ēris, adj., *old.*

vexillum, i, n., *a flag;* a red flag placed upon the general's tent as a signal for battle or marching.

vexo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harass, ravage.*

vīa, ae, f., *a way, street, road.*

vīātor, ōris, m., *traveller.*

vicēni, ae, a, num., distrib. adj., *twenty each.* [viginti.]

vicēsīmus (vicessimus and vigesimus), a, um, num. ord. adj., *the twentieth.* [viginti.]

vicies, adv., *twenty times.* [viginti.]

vicinītās, ātis, f., *neighborhood; people in a neighborhood, neighbors.*

vīcis, (gen.; nom. wanting) f., *change, turn,—in vicem, in turn.*

victīma, ae, f., *a sacrifice, victim.*

victor, ōris, m., *a conqueror;* in apposition, *victorious.* [vinco.]

victōria, ae, f., *victory.*

victus, a, um, part. vinco.

victus, ūs, m. (*that on which one lives*), *provisions, sustenance, victuals.* [vivo.]

vicus, i, m., *village.*

vidēo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *to see;* pass,

videor, *I seem or am seen;* impers. pass. *to seem fit or good.*

vīgilia, ae, f., *a being awake, a watching; sleeplessness; a watch of the night.* The Romans divided the night from sunset till sunrise into four equal "watches."

vīginti, adj., indecl., *twenty.*

vīmen, īnis, n., *a pliant twig, withe, osier.*

vincio, ire, vinxi, vinctum, *bind.*

vinco, ēre, vīci, victum, *to conquer, be victorious; vincite=have your own way.*

vinculum, i, n., a chain, bond, fetters. [vincio.]

vindico, are, avi, atum, claim, demand; set free, liberate; avenge, revenge, take vengeance on or for; punish.

vinea, ae, f., a vinea, mantlet, pent-house, shed, a shelter used during sieges to protect the men engaged in using the battering-ram and other engines. [vinum.]

vinum, i, n., wine.

violo, are, avi, atum, to do violence to, injure. [vis.]

vir, viri, m., a man, a husband.

vires, v. vis.

virgo, inis, f., a maiden.

virgultum, i, n., brushwood, under-wood, thicket.

viritim, adv., man by man, individually. [vir.]

virtus, ūtis, f., manliness; bravery, courage, valor; worth, virtue. [vir.]

vis, acc. **vim**, abl. **vi**, f., in sing., violence, force, power; plur. **vires**, **virium**, etc., bodily strength.

visus. See **video**.

vita, ae, f., life. [vivo.]

vito, are, avi, atum, to avoid, evade.

vitrum, i, n., wood.

vivo, ere, vixi, victum, to live.

vivus, a, um, adj., alive, living. [vivo.]

vix, adv., scarcely, with difficulty; barely.

vobis, see **vos**.

voco, are, avi, atum, to call, invite, challenge.

volo, velle, vólui, to wish, will, be willing.

vóluntárius, a, um, adj., willing, of one's own free will: subst., **voluntarii**, orum, m., volunteers. [voluntas.]

vóluntās, ātis, f., will, free-will, inclination, disposition.

vóluptās, ātis, f., pleasure.

vós, plur. of tu, pron. pers., you.

vövéo, ere, vövi, vötum, to vow, to promise solemnly.

vox, vöcis, f., a voice, cry.

vulgo, adv., commonly, generally. [vulgus.]

vulgus, i, (usually n., occasionally m., but not in Caesar) the mass of the people, the people, the public.

vulnëro, are, avi, atum, to wound, injure by a wound. [vulnus.]

vulnus, ëris, n., a wound.

vultus, ūs, m., countenance, expression of the face, look. [volo, lit. "the wish as expressed in the face."]

ADDENDA.

ad-figo, *V. af-figo.*

ad-fingo, *V. af-fingo.*

ad-gredior, *V. ag-gredior.*

ad-licio, *V. al-licio.*

ad-paro, *V. ap-paro.*

ad-pello, *V. ap-pello.*

a-mens, *ntis*, *adj.*, *mad, senseless.*

ap-porto, *V. ad-porto.*

caelum, *i. n.*, *heaven, sky.*

caedo, *ēre*, *cecidī*, *caesum*, *cut, kill.*

celer, *eris*, *ere*, *adj.*, *swift.*

circumduco, *ēre*, *xi*, *ctum*, *lead around.*

clēmens, *ntis*, *adj.*, *gentle, kind.*

colligo, *are*, *avi*, *atum*, *bind together*

(*ligo*); distinguish fr. *colligo*, *ēre*.

cōminus, *adv.*, *in close combat* [*con, manus*].

contego, *ēre*, *xi*, *ctum*, *cover up.*

continentia, *ae*, *f.*, *self-restraint.*

culmen, *minis*, *n.*, *summit, top, roof.*

dens, *ntis*, *m.*, *tooth.*

densus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, *thick.*

divulgo, *are*, *avi*, *atum*, *spread abroad.*

dorsum, *i. n.*, *a back; ridge.*

duplex, *icis*, *adj.*, *two-fold* [*plico*].

ēquidem, *indeed.*

ex-cido, *ēre*, *cidī*, *cisum*, *cut out.*

ex-curro, *ēre*, *curri*, *cursum*, *make a sally.*

fons, *ntis*, *m.*, *fountain, spring.*

gaesum, *i. n.*, *a Celtic javelin.*

glorior, *ari*, *atus sum*, *glory in, boast of.*

grandis, *e*, *adj.*, *large.*

humānitās, *ātis*, *f.*, *civilization; refinement.*

ideo, *adv.*, *therefore.*

includo, *ēre*, *clusi*, *clusum*, *shut in.*

incuso, *are*, *avi*, *atum*, *upbraid, rebuke.*

indulgentia, *ae*, *f.*, *indulgence.*

intro, *adv.*, *inwards.*

invicem, *adv.*, *in turn.*

iussu, *adv.*, *by order.*

languidus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, *feeble, spiritless.*

lignum, *i. n.*, *wood.*

mālē, *adv.*, *badly.*

mūlio, *ōnis*, *m.*, *mule-driver.*

mūto, *are*, *avi*, *atum*, *change.*

nauticus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, *naval.*

occurso, *are*, *avi*, *atum*, *rush to meet.*

ociter, *adv. compar.*, *ocius*, *swiftly.*

paries, *ētis*, *m.*, *a house wall.*

patienter, *adv.*, *patiently, with endurance.*

penna, *V. pinna.*

perfidus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, *perfidious.*

pertimesco, *ēre*, *timui*, *fear intently.*

proruo, *ēre*, *rui*, *rutum*, *dash down, overthrow.*

quamdiu, *adv. and conj.*, *how long, as long.*

quotidianus, *V. Cotidianus.*

rebellio, *ōnis*, *f.*, *a renewal of war.*

saepes, *is*, *f.*, *a hedge.*

satis, *adv.*, *enough.*

sicubi, *conj.*, *if anywhere.*

signifer, *standard-bearer.*

simulo, *are*, *avi*, *atum*, *pretend.*

sincerē, *adv.*, *honestly, truly.*

stabilitās, *-ātis*, *steadiness* [*sto, stand*].

suf-fodio, *V. sub-fodio.*

vallus, *i. m.*, *a stake.*

NOTES.

et.

en-

in-

men,

long,

ar.

[sto,

NOTES.

NOTES.

NOTES.



3